

TAUNTON'S

Fine Woodworking

Build an Arts & Crafts bed

June 2002

No. 156

**Six ways
to edge
plywood**

**Furniture-design
survival guide**

**Solutions
for blotch-free
staining**

**Moisture meters
for every budget**

**Perfect joinery
using backsaws**

**Traditional
tombstone
doors**



Brush on a flawless finish

U.S. \$6.95

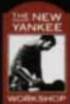
Canada \$7.95

U.K. £4.50



Is it your job, your hobby or your passion?

Yes.



Delta is a proud sponsor
of these PBS programs.



Whether you're a professional or a hobbyist, Delta has a lathe to meet your needs.

If you're new to the world of turning, turn to Delta's Midi-Lathe and start creating decorative projects like pens and small bowls. Looking to turn larger stuff? Turn to the 14" Work Shop Lathe. Need even greater capacity to turn heavy spindles and very large vessels? Then turn to Delta's 16" Steel Bed Lathe. All offer the features you want. Plus the versatility and stability you need. For the name of your nearest dealer, call Delta Machinery at 800-438-2486 (U.S.) or 519-836-2840 (Canada). Or visit deltamachinery.com.

 **DELTA**[®]
SERIOUS WOODWORKING TOOLS SINCE 1919.

Showcase your woodworking projects online.



\$99
a year

Let us host your
woodworking web site.

- 100MB disk space
- 100 email accounts
- 5GB monthly transfer
- Shopping Cart
- Frontpage Support
- CGI, PHP, MySQL
- Control Panel
- Lots more!

WWW.FATCOW.COM/WOOD

Toll Free: 1-866-506-9568

READER SERVICE NO. 170

The Wagner Advantage

A Superior line of "Pin-Free" Moisture Meters



New Features Include. . .

- ★ Selectable Species Settings
- ★ Press/Hold Readings Function
- ★ No Manual Corrections Required
- ★ Easy to Read Digital Display
- ★ Extended Species Range for Exotic, Denser Hardwood Species

Proud Members of:



National
Wood Flooring
Association



AWFS
ASSOCIATION OF
WOOD FLOORING
SPECIALISTS

PROPERTY THROUGH AMERICAN TECHNOLOGY
WOOD MACHINERY
MANUFACTURERS
OF AMERICA

www.moisturemeters.com

Toll Free: 1-800-944-7078 Tel: (541) 582-0541 Fax: (541) 582-4138

© 2002 Wagner Electronic Products, Inc.

Superior Core Technology!



Wagner's Proven
moisture meter
technology is virtually
unaffected by wood
temperature
or surface moisture.



READER SERVICE NO. 196

TOP PICK in WOOD Magazine! June, 2001

The
OSBORNE
by
Excalibur
Miter Guide

ORDER TODAY
FOR ONLY \$179.99

COVERED BY EXCALIBUR LIFETIME GUARANTEE!

So Simple...
So Stable...
So Accurate!

OSBORNE EB-3 by Excalibur
THE GREATEST INNOVATION IN MITER GUIDE
DESIGN IN OVER 100 YEARS!

Solid triangular configuration keeps the guide
absolutely rigid, even at the outermost end of the fence.
No movement in the fence, no movement in the work
piece, no gaps in the miter joint.

Want more info? See our website...

www.osbornemfg.com

Want to own one? CALL 1-800-357-4118

EXCALIBUR • 940 BROCK ROAD, PICKERING, ONTARIO L1W2A1

READER SERVICE NO. 182

Professional Power DR® CHIPPER

Makes Brush Piles **DISAPPEAR FAST!**

- Devours branches up to 4-1/2" thick!
- When cutting your own lumber, turn limbs and branches into useful wood chip mulch in **MINUTES!**
- **3 to 4 times FASTER** than ordinary homeowner chipper/shredders which were originally designed for grinding up garden wastes as opposed to heavy chipping.
- **Up to 18 HP** twin-cylinder Briggs & Stratton engine with and without Electric Starting!
- Sold **FACTORY-DIRECT** at great savings!

Three sizes, 10 to
18 HP; Electric-
Starting and
Road-
Towable
models
available.



MADE IN USA

CALL TOLL-FREE
1-800-977-3300

YES! Please rush complete **FREE DETAILS** of the Professional-Power **DR® CHIPPERS**, including prices and specifications of features and options, plus Factory-Direct Savings now in effect.

Name _____ FWW
Address _____
City _____ State _____ ZIP _____

DR® COUNTRY HOME PRODUCTS*, Dept. 42902X
Meigs Road, P.O. Box 25, Vergennes, VT 05491
www.drchipper.com

Please mail coupon or call
TOLL FREE for complete
FREE DETAILS!

READER SERVICE NO. 105

Departments

- 6 Contributors
- 8 Letters
- 14 **Methods of Work**
Adjustable jig for cutting tapers;
Sharpening carriage; Crosscutting
aids; Tablesaw extension with rollers
- 24 **Notes & Comment**
Woodworking at Colonial
Williamsburg; Jefferson desk
goes to Smithsonian Institution
- 32 **Tools & Materials**
New cordless nailer from Porter-
Cable; Parallel bar clamps;
Inflatable roof rack
- 84 **Current Work**
A gallery of our readers'
woodworking
- 88 **Rules of Thumb**
Designing furniture: a survival guide
- 92 **Questions & Answers**
Breadboard-end basics; How to fix
veneer blisters in old furniture;
Sticker-stain blues
- 100 **Master Class**
Silver inlay adds refinement
to an Arts and Crafts bed
- 113 **Finish Line**
Prevent blotching when staining



Arts and Crafts bed, p. 44



Ipé, p. 66



Six ways to hide plywood edges, p. 56



On the Cover:
Professional finisher
David Sorg reveals his
secrets to brushing on
a flawless finish.
See p. 38
Photo: Mark Schofield

Articles

38 Choosing and Using Brushes

The right brush and a good technique make finishing a pleasure

BY DAVID SORG

ON OUR WEB SITE: Watch a video clip of the author brushing a raised panel

44 Arts and Crafts Bed

Router templates help create smooth curves and tight joinery

BY GARY ROGOWSKI

52 Sharpening Hollow-Mortising Chisels and Bits

Mortisers cut best when the chisels and bits have been properly sharpened

BY BRIAN GRAHAM

55 Bit setup and cutting tips

56 Six Ways to Edge Plywood

The choices vary in their complexity and durability and the time they take to execute

BY MARIO RODRIGUEZ

62 Backsaw Workshop

With the right technique, handsaws are often a better choice than machines

BY PHILIP C. LOWE

ON OUR WEB SITE: See the author demonstrate the correct sawing technique

66 Ipé

Often marketed as a teak substitute, this strong wood is good for more than decking

BY JON ARNO

68 Learn to Turn Spindles

With only four tools, you can turn cylinders, tapers, beads and coves

BY ERNIE CONOVER

ON OUR WEB SITE: See a video clip of the author turning beads and coves

74 Tombstone Doors

Combine machine work and handwork to create arched panel doors with 18th-century style (Part III of "Building a Pennsylvania Secretary")

BY LONNIE BIRD

ON OUR WEB SITE: Get a tour of the finished secretary

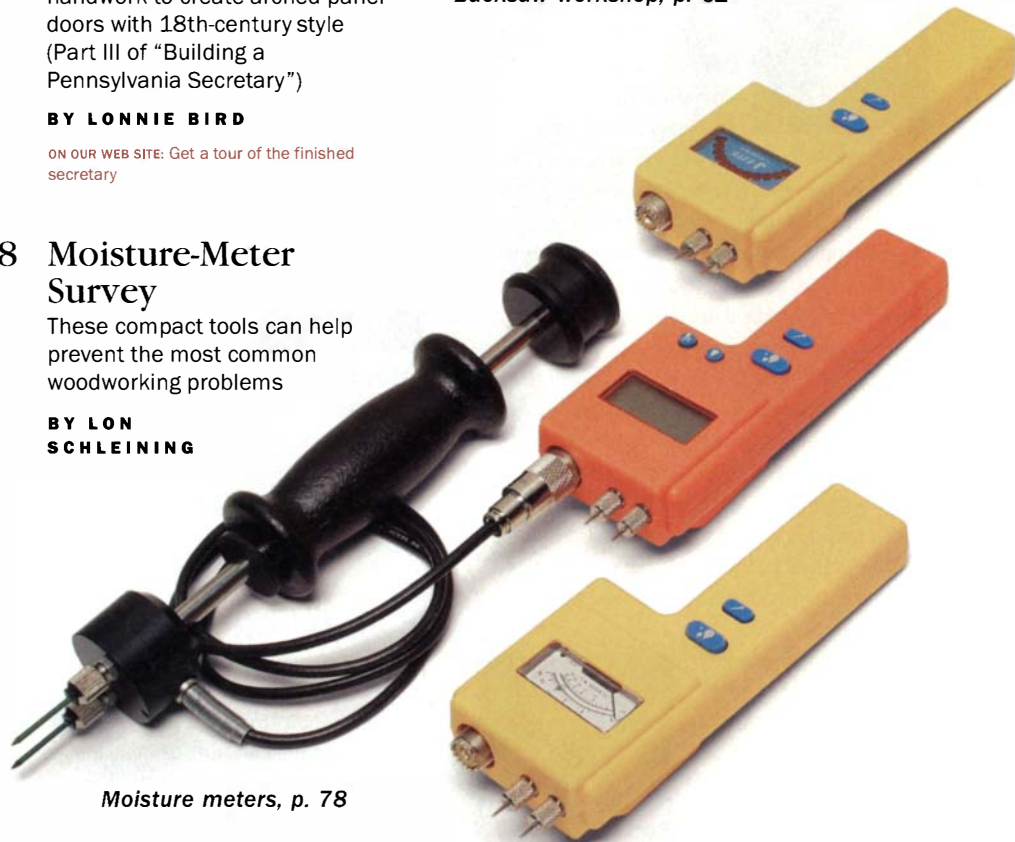
78 Moisture-Meter Survey

These compact tools can help prevent the most common woodworking problems

BY LON SCHLEINING



Backsaw workshop, p. 62



Moisture meters, p. 78



Contributors

Teri Masaschi (Finish Line) spends part of each week working for Santa Fe Fine Finishing doing interior finishes for the many new custom homes in the area. She also finishes and restores furniture at her home in the hills outside Albuquerque, N.M. Her knowledge of finishing and restoring has made her a growing presence on the lecture circuit. By dividing the various stains and coatings into families, she helps her students focus on finding an appropriate finish for the project at hand. This year she is teaching at The Center for Furniture Craftsmanship in Rockport, Maine, the Northwest Woodworking Studio in Portland, Ore., as well as in Albuquerque and Santa Fe.



Gary Rogowski ("Arts and Crafts Bed" and Master Class) is a contributing editor and runs the Northwest Woodworking Studio, a school in Portland, Ore. He is the author of *The Complete Illustrated Guide to Joinery* (The Taunton

Press, 2001), part of a three-volume series that includes "Furniture & Cabinet Construction" and "Shaping Wood." After making furniture professionally for two decades, Rogowski turned his attention to teaching in 1997. Today, his school offers a wide slate of classes for beginning- to master-level students, with teachers recruited from around the country. He calls the classes "Craftsman workshops" to emphasize the school's "tradition-based approach." With both his facilities and schedule expanding, Rogowski said his goal is to make the studio "the premier center for woodworking education in the northwest United States." For class offerings, check out www.northwestwoodworking.com.

David Sorg ("Choosing and Using Brushes") became interested in finishing when he was old enough to drag home beat-up treasures from country auctions. A professional finisher in Denver, Colo., for 17 years, he still gets excited seeing the pieces transformed and often regrets seeing them leave his shop. When he's not making sweeping



motions with a broad varnish brush, Sorg loads some smaller brushes and artist's oil paints into his old Cadillac and heads for the mountains to paint landscapes. His videotapes on wood finishing and decorative finishes, *Fine Furniture Finishing*, can be found at hundreds of public libraries or on his web site: www.finefurniturefinishing.com.



Even as a kid, **Brian Graham** ("Sharpening Hollow-Mortising Chisels and Bits") was hooked on woodworking, but he didn't get serious about the craft until the late

1970s. About that time, he also developed an interest in woodworking hand tools. Soon he was collecting and using old tools and making new ones as reproductions. Old tools, he said, "give you a real appreciation for the past." Graham's affection for history, woodworking and old tools serves as a perfect complement to another interest: that of an 18th-century military reenactor. Spring through fall, he spends a good many weekends with other reenactors, demonstrating life as a soldier in the Continental Army's 1st Maryland Regiment. Dressed in authentic garb, Graham pitches a tent and for a couple of days lives the life of a Revolutionary War soldier. Visitors to his tent are likely to find Graham using woodworking hand tools to make camp stools, tool handles or most anything else made of wood that might be needed in a typical encampment.

Fine Woodworking

PUBLISHER

Timothy D. Schreiner

EXECUTIVE EDITOR
Anatole Burkin

ART DIRECTOR
Michael Pekovich

MANAGING EDITOR **Matthew Teague**

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

William Duckworth, Asa Christiana, Thomas G. Begnal, Timothy Sams

ASSISTANT EDITOR **Mark Schofield**

SENIOR COPY/PRODUCTION EDITOR
Thomas McKenna

ASSOCIATE ART DIRECTOR **Kelly J. Dunton**

ASSISTANT ART DIRECTOR **Erika Marks**

IMAGING SPECIALIST **William M. Godfrey**

SHOP MANAGER **John White**

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT **Christopher X. Baumann**

CONTRIBUTING EDITORS

Tage Frid, R. Bruce Hoadley, Christian Becksvoort, Mario Rodriguez, Gary Rogowski, Mike Dunbar, Lon Schleining, Garrett Hack

CONSULTING EDITOR **Chris Minick**

METHODS OF WORK **Jim Richey**

INDEXER **Harriet Hodges**

GROUP PUBLISHER **Jon Miller**

ADMINISTRATIVE ASSISTANT
Mary Lou von der Lancken

MARKETING MANAGER **Karen Lutjen**

MARKETING ASSOCIATE **Diana Rabito**

CIRCULATION MANAGER **Christine Rosato**

ADVERTISING MANAGER
David Gray

SENIOR NATIONAL ACCOUNTS MANAGERS
Linda Abbett, Carol Marks

NATIONAL ACCOUNTS MANAGER
John Dyckman

ACCOUNTS MANAGER **Jason W. Clark**

WOODWORKING BOOKS & VIDEOS

EXECUTIVE EDITOR **Helen Albert**

Fine Woodworking: (ISSN: 0361-3453) is published bimonthly, with a special seventh issue in the winter, by The Taunton Press, Inc., Newtown, CT 06470-5506. Telephone (203) 426-8171. Periodicals postage paid at Newtown, CT 06470 and at additional mailing offices. GST paid registration #123210981. U.S. distribution by Curtis Circulation Company, 730 River Road, New Milford, NJ 07646-3048 and Eastern News Distributors, Inc., One Media Way, 12406 Route 250, Milan, OH 44846-9705.

Subscription Rates: \$32 for one year, \$56 for two years, \$79 for three years (in U.S. dollars, please). Canadian residence GST included. Single copy, \$6.95. Single copies outside the U.S. and possessions, \$7.95.

Postmaster: Send address changes to *Fine Woodworking*, The Taunton Press, Inc., 63 South Main St., P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

Printed in the USA

HOW TO CONTACT US:

Fine Woodworking

The Taunton Press, 63 S. Main St., P.O. Box 5506,
Newtown, CT 06470-5506 (203) 426-8171

www.finewoodworking.com

Editorial:

To contribute an article, give a tip, or ask a question, contact *Fine Woodworking* at the address above or:

Call: (800) 283-7252, ext. 423

Fax: (203) 270-6753

E-mail: fw@taunton.com

Customer Service:

For subscription inquiries, you can:

- Visit our subscriber service section at:
www.finewoodworking.com

- E-mail us: fwservice@taunton.com

- Call our customer support center:

To report an address change, inquire about an order, or solve a problem, call:
(800) 477-8727

To subscribe, purchase back issues, books or videos, or give a gift, call:
(800) 888-8286

Advertising:

To find out about advertising:

Call: (800) 283-7252, ext. 829

E-mail: fwads@taunton.com

Member Audit
Bureau of Circulation



Retail:

If you'd like to carry *Fine Woodworking* in your store, call the Taunton Trade Company at:

(800) 283-7252, ext. 329

Mailing List:

Occasionally we make our subscribers' names and addresses available to responsible companies whose products or services we feel may be of some interest to you. Most of our subscribers find this to be a helpful way to learn about useful resources and services. If you don't want us to share your name with other companies, please contact our Customer Service Department at:

(800) 477-8727

The Taunton Guarantee:

If at any time you're not completely satisfied with *Fine Woodworking*, you can cancel your subscription and receive a full and immediate refund of the entire subscription price. No questions asked.

Copyright 2002 by The Taunton Press, Inc. No reproduction without permission of The Taunton Press, Inc.



The Modular Workshop

See it at...
www.tooldock.com

For more information call: 1-866-866-5362

©2002 Waterloo Industries, Inc. USA

READER SERVICE NO. 140

BASKETRY & SEAT WEAVING SUPPLIES

(Retail/Wholesale)

Reeds • Hoops • Cane • Rush
Repair • Restoration



CALL (800) 462-6660

H.H. PERKINS CO.

Established 1917

222 Universal Drive North Haven, CT 06473

(203) 787-1123

FAX (203) 787-1161

www.hhperkins.com

READER SERVICE NO. 202

Veritas® Low-Angle Smooth Plane



Lee Valley Tools Ltd.
12 East River Street
Ogdensburg, N.Y. 13669

The newest in our series, the Veritas low-angle smooth plane has all the advantages of our low-angle block with the added benefit of a full-size bench plane footprint. It is excellent for end-grain work, smoothing large surfaces and, with the large side wings, is ideal for shooting miters. Features an adjustable mouth, a 2" A2 tool steel blade and a body cast from ductile iron. If you have never owned a low-angle smooth, you will find it a delight to use and immediately one of your favorite planes.

05P25.01

\$139.00

Shipping and N.Y. sales tax extra.

For more information or to request a catalog, contact us at:

1-800-871-8158

or customerservice@leevalley.com

Shop online: www.leevalley.com



READER SERVICE NO. 144



New Duplicating Lathe

- Steady-rest attached to copier
- 49" between centers
- 500 lbs., 1.5 HP motor
- 4 speeds

LAGUNA TOOLS

You Build With Wood, We Build With Trust.

800-234-1976

www.lagunatools.com

17101 Murphy Ave., Irvine, CA 92614 (949) 474-1200

READER SERVICE NO. 206

Letters

The great dual-cover experiment—I believe that *Fine Woodworking* magazine portrays the topics of interest to wood-working neophytes and top artists alike.

Those who know and appreciate *Fine Woodworking* either subscribe or purchase it at their favorite newsstand without regard for the message portrayed by the photo on the cover.

If your intent is to attract new readers and subscribers, by all means, do not replace the magnificence of such wonderful craftsmanship that only a photograph of the completed piece can convey.

In case you need reminding, I offer this primer: You are in business to sell magazines and to derive the income from there. If you are in doubt over the impact that high-quality photography of beautifully crafted furniture contributes to the sale of a product so aptly named, may I suggest that you continue to use pictures of individuals doing something but that you rename the magazine *Fine Fred*.

See how many fewer copies your replacement sells!

—Edwin Lester, Tucson, Ariz.

You asked for feedback on the *FWW* #154 dual magazine cover, so I'll weigh in with my opinion. Let me first state that my serious interest in woodworking dates back to the early '70s, about the time of the general resurgence of interest in crafts across the United States. For those of us just getting interested in woodworking in those days, there were two fundamental issues to resolve:

Calling all toolmakers

The next edition of our annual *Tools & Shops* bonus issue is already in the works. And once again we're looking for photos of artfully made hand tools and toolboxes to showcase in the Current Work department. Feel free to send them via snail mail (*Fine Woodworking*, 63 S. Main St., Newtown, CT 06470) or e-mail (cbau-mann@taunton.com). If you need tips on photography, take a look at p. 87 of this issue's Current Work.

how do we learn to do good woodworking and where do we buy the tools to do it? The latter question was answered when I found Woodcraft Supply and later Frog Tool Co. These sources of supply gave a much needed option to the local Sears.

The question of learning the craft was more difficult to solve. Serious books were not readily available at the time, particularly books that revealed the how-to of various techniques. And there were no schools, at least locally. Then along came *Fine Woodworking*. I remember that my roommate and I were dubious of your magazine at the beginning, so we flipped a coin to see who would subscribe for a year. He lost and had to pay up, which is the reason that I'm not a charter subscriber. Suffice it to say that your magazine filled a much needed void in elucidating the mysteries of the craft. And you continue to do so.

With this background in mind, I can now cast my vote for the cover that shows Lonnie Bird performing a task. It's not that I dislike a shot of the finished piece, but I think the real value of your magazine has been showing people how to accomplish the task at hand. More often than not, you show a photo of the finished piece in the article, and certainly the Current Work section offers inspiration to your readers. So mark me down for a cover showing work being done.

—Jerry Spady, Oak Ridge, Tenn.

Poll results revealed—Based on the results of our unscientific online poll, 61% of you favored the cover featuring the finished piece. Only 39% of you liked the cover with the man and the piece. A total of 3,643 voted. To read some of the comments, visit our web site (www.finewoodworking.com) and go the link named Cover Poll.

PVC heating hazards—The custom tool hooks made from PVC pipe and illustrated in *Methods of Work* (*FWW* #153, pp. 16, 18) are nice-looking, but the instructions call for applying heat to the pipe in order to straighten one part of the curve. PVC releases toxic and carcinogenic gases when heated, so the risk to one's health is hardly worth the easy



The Taunton Press

Inspiration for hands-on living™

INDEPENDENT PUBLISHERS SINCE 1975

TAUNTON, INC.

Founders, Paul and Jan Roman

THE TAUNTON PRESS

President & CEO John Lively

Chief of Operations Thomas Luxeder

Finance Director Timothy Rahr

Publisher, Magazines Jon Miller

Publisher, Magazines Sarah Roman

Publisher, Books James Childs

Editorial Director Marc Vassallo

Creative Director Susan Edelman

Human Resources Director Carol Marotti

Controller Wayne Reynolds

Technology Services Director Edward Kingston

Promotion Director Steven Turk

Fulfillment Director Patricia Williamson

Associate Ad Sales Director Jeff Dwight

TAUNTON TRADE COMPANY

President, Jan Roman

TAUNTON DIRECT

Circulation Director, Ned Bixler

TAUNTON NEW MEDIA

Director, Suzanne Roman

THE TAUNTON STAFF

Books: *Marketing:* Allison Hollett, Kathryn Dolson, Brandi Gabriele. *Editorial:* Maria Taylor, Robyn Aitken, Helen Albert, Peter Chapman, Carol Kasper, Carolyn Mandarano, Suzanne Noel, Jennifer Peters, Stephanie Ramp, Amy Reilly, Jennifer Renjilian, Marilyn Zelinski. *Art:* Paula Schlosser, Joanne Bisson, Nancy Boudreau, Wendi Mijal, Lynne Phillips, Carol Singer, Rosalind Wanke. *Manufacturing:* Thomas Greco, Michael Gyulay.

Business Office: Holly Smith, Deborah Cooke, Gayle Hammond. *Legal:* Carolyn Kovaleski. *Magazine Print Production:* Philip Van Kirk, Nicole Anastas.

Distribution: Paul Seipold, Aaron Lund, Mary Ann Costagliola, Leanne Dion, Deborah Greene, Linnea Ingram, Frederick Monnes, Raymond Passaro, Elsie Rodriguez, Alice Saxton, David Scalzi, Rocco Toce.

Finance/Accounting: *Finance:* Marcia Foster, Andrea Henchcliffe, David Wasserman, Kathy Worth. *Accounting:* Patrick Lamontagne, John Vaccino, Irene Arfaras, Lydia Krikorian, Elaine Yamin, Carol Diehm, Margaret Bafundo, Dorothy Blasko, Susan Burke, James Post, Lorraine Parsons, Priscilla Wakeman.

Fulfillment: Diane Goulart. *Client Services:* Jodi Klein, Nancy Knorr, Donna Capalbo, Renee Pagelson. *Customer Service:* Ellen Grassi, Carole Ando, Bonnie Beardsley, Katherine Clarke, Frances Denninger, Alfred Dreher, Monica Duhancik, Summerlily Gajdosik, Margaret Hicock, Barbara Lowe, Eileen McNulty, Patricia Parks, Deana Parker, Patricia Pineau, Marylou Thompson. *Data Entry:* Anne Champlin, Madelaine Frengs, Debra Sennefelder, Andrea Shorrock, Betty Stepney.

Human Resources: Linda Ballerini, Christine Lincoln, Dawn Ussery.

Information Technology Services: *Applications Development:* Leslie Kern, Roger Seliga, Heidi Waldkirch, Gabriel Dunn, Kathy Martin, Robert Nielsen, Marjorie Omalyev, Linda Reddington, Lawrence Sullivan, Cynthia Zibelin. *Desktop and Network Support:* Kenneth Jones, Michael Colonari, Michael Lewis, Jay Ligouri, Joseph Manganello.

Marketing: Renu Aldrich.

Operations: Michael Capalbo, Lori Runco, Christopher Moyer, Jeannette Pascal, Dorothy Simpson, Ward Willis. *T Room:* Michael Louchen, Geraldine Benno, Anna Pendergast, Norma-Jean Taylor. *Maintenance:* Susan Nerich, Alvin Jack, Lincoln Peters. *Facilities:* Mark Morehouse.

Promotion: Nina Anthoine, William Brady, Mary Beth Cleary, Stephanie Fagan, Maria LaPiana, William Sims. *Promotion Print Production:* Diane Flanagan, John Cavallaro.

Taunton Creative and Editorial: Robert Goodfellow, Amy Russo, Peter Lewis, Sarah Opdahl, Pamela Winn. *Photography:* Scott Phillips. *Prepress:* Deborah Cooper, Richard Booth, William Bivona, David Blasko, James Chappuis, Brian Leavitt, Chansam Thammavongsa. *Advertising Production:* Laura Bergeron, John Garofalo, Steven Molnar, Patricia Petro, Kathryn Simonds, Martha Stammer. *Editorial:* Steven Aitken.

Taunton Direct: Nancy Clark, Deborah Johnston, David Pond, Christine Rosato, Eileen Sheehan, Jeanne Todaro.

Taunton New Media: Jodie Delohery, Philip Allard, Christopher Casey, Mark Coleman, Ruth Dobseavage, Gary Junken, Timothy Murphy, Rita Scanlan, Karen Yitts.

Taunton Trade Company: Susan Shaw, *Director:* John Bacigalupi, Trina Bayles, Paul McGahren, Eve Pison, Elizabeth Quintiliano, Maureen Remitz. *Single Copy Sales:* Mark Stiekman, Valerie Droukas.

TAUNTON MAGAZINES

Fine Woodworking
Fine Homebuilding
Threads
Fine Gardening
Fine Cooking

Our magazines are for people who are passionate about their pursuits. Written by practicing experts in the field, Taunton Press magazines provide authentic, reliable information supported by instructive and inspiring visuals.

TAUNTON BOOKS

Our books are filled with in-depth information and creative ideas from the finest authors in their fields. Whether you're practicing a craft or engaged in the creation of your home, Taunton books will inspire you to discover new levels of accomplishment.

WWW.TAUNTON.COM

Our website is a place where you can discover more about the interests you enjoy, converse with fellow enthusiasts, shop at our convenient on-line store or contact customer service.

EMPLOYMENT INFORMATION

To inquire about career opportunities, please e-mail us at tauntonjobs@taunton.com or visit our website www.taunton.com. You may also write to The Taunton Press, Human Resources, 63 S. Main St., Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470.

CUSTOMER SERVICE

We are here to answer any questions you might have and to help you order our magazines, books and videos. Just call us toll-free at 1-800-477-8727.

The Taunton Press, Inc., Taunton Direct, Inc., Taunton Trade Company, Inc., and Taunton New Media, Inc., are all subsidiaries of Taunton, Inc.

The Precision Router Lift
Total control for table mounted routers.

Only \$269
reg. \$299

The PRL (Precision Router Lift) fits a PC 7518 directly and is available with adapter collars for other fixed base routers.

- Change bits above the table.
- Includes (3) aluminum twist lock rings.
- Adjustable index scales.
- Elevated crank handle.
- Includes threaded starting pin.

Woodpeckers
1.800.752.0725 • www.woodpeck.com

MAO SHAN is now online. Come visit our website and see all of our Do-It-Yourself Woodworking Machinery!

- Competitive prices!
- Professional manufacturer since 1980 of woodworking machinery.
- ISO 9001 Certified!
- Dealer and Distributors' inquiries only please.
- Cast iron foundry established in 1975, casting and machining of OEM parts.
- OEM & ODM inquiries are welcome.



<http://www.maoshan.com>



E-mail: maoshan@ms15.hinet.net
Fax: 886-4-22792667

READER SERVICE NO. 177

SPECIAL INTRODUCTORY PRICES SAW BLADES



**LASER CUT
SAW PLATES
FOR
LOW NOISE**

**High Performance Industrial
Quality Saws At Affordable Prices**

Description:	List Price:	Sale Price:
10" x 30T TCG	\$ 69.00	\$ 37.50
10" x 40T TCG	\$ 73.45	\$ 37.50
10" x 50T ATB	\$ 63.66	\$ 39.00
10" x 60T TCG	\$ 69.65	\$ 39.50
10" x 60T ATB	\$ 69.65	\$ 39.50
10" x 80T TCG	\$ 106.60	\$ 55.00
10" x 80T ATB	\$ 106.60	\$ 55.00
10" x 80T* ATB	\$ 129.40	\$ 65.00
10" x 80T**ATB	\$ 139.00	\$ 65.00

*Double Face Laminate Saw 30° **Mitre Saw Blade with Raker

Visit us on the web at www.cggsschmidt.com

CHARLES G.G. SCHMIDT & CO., INC.
301 West Grand Avenue, Montvale, NJ 07645
To Order 1 800- SCHMIDT
Fax: 1 201-391-3565



Please see Catalog No. 700 for a complete list of all our Woodworking Tools and Accessories.

READER SERVICE NO. 169

Do more.

Our tools do more,
so you can too.

FESTOOL
Like nothing else

888.463.3786
www.festool-usa.com

READER SERVICE NO. 173

2002 Workshops

CENTER for FURNITURE CRAFTSMANSHIP

BRIAN BOGGS	<i>Chair Making</i>
LYNETTE BRETON	<i>Personal Style</i>
SUSAN CHURCHILL	<i>Rustic Bentwood</i>
OWEN EDWARDS	<i>Hand Skills</i>
JULIE GODFREY	<i>Marquetry</i>
GARRETT HACK	<i>Exquisite Details</i>
DAVID HAIG	<i>Curved Furniture</i>
WAYNE HALL	<i>Rustic Stick</i>
EJLER HJORTH-WESTH	<i>Design & Craft</i>
DARRYL KEIL	<i>Veneering</i>
PETER KORN	<i>Basic Woodworking</i>
PHILIP LOWE	<i>Hand Tool Skills</i>
JAMES MACDONALD	<i>Marquetry</i>
TERI MASACHI	<i>Finishing</i>
WILL NEPTUNE	<i>Architectural Carving</i>
ALAN PETERS	<i>Intermediate Furniture</i>
MICHAEL PURYEAR	<i>Curved Furniture</i>
CHRIS PYE	<i>Carving</i>
CRAIG STEVENS	<i>Design & Craft</i>
SUSAN WORKING	<i>Personal Style</i>
ROD WALES	<i>Hands-on Design</i>
LIZA WHEELER	<i>Really Basic</i>

25 Mill Street, Rockport, Maine 04856
207-594-5611 ■ Peter Korn, Director
www.woodschoool.org
cfc@woodschoool.org

manufacture of an item which could be made in some other, safer way.

—Jim Stark, Hanover, Ind.

Inspect your compressor—Reading through your recent *Tools & Shops* issue prompts me to write about a safety issue I don't see addressed often: the placement of air compressors inside the shop. A number of years ago, I had the experience of having an air-compressor tank explode inside my two-car garage workshop. The explosion blew the double garage doors into the driveway and sprayed shattered glass into the street. The drywall inside the shop was collapsed between the studs, and the stucco outer wall had large cracks and a prominent bulge. If I had been in the shop when it happened, I would surely have been killed or seriously injured.

When the fire department came to investigate the accident, they told me that the tank had corroded from the inside, thus becoming weak along a welded seam. In my area, commercial shops are required to locate their air compressors outside the building to prevent injuries in the event of such a failure. While I would admit that the odds against such an accident in a small shop are pretty high, the potential adverse consequences make it worth considering locating the compressor outdoors.

The fire-department investigators also suggested I replace my compressor with one that had an ASME certified tank. All tanks for commercial shops must be ASME certified, which sets certain standards for materials and workmanship.

—Carter Pease, San Diego, Calif.

Shedding more light—As a consulting electrical engineer, lighting designer and woodworker, I would like to say that Jack L. Lindsey did a very good job covering the subject of lighting design in his article "Lighting for the Workshop" (*FWW* #154, pp. 56-61).

I only thought of one other issue which might have been mentioned: covers to protect the tubes from breakage should a long board strike one. For commercial projects, we generally specify strip lights with 4-ft. wire guards, which protect the lamps from such instances. Another approach may be to use 1-ft. by 4-ft.

wraparound fluorescent fixtures—which come in two-lamp and four-lamp versions—with an acrylic lens over the lamps in lieu of open strip lights. The acrylic lens not only distributes the light better but also protects the lamps from being struck by lumber.

—Michael A. Svoboda, Memphis, Tenn.

The sexes in sync—I read Carol H. Peterson's letter (*FWW* #155, p. 10), and as a woman, occasional carver and the wife of a woodworker, I think I can comment on her polite but serious criticism.

Please don't think that all of your female readers feel slighted by the so-called gender-specific language commonly used. The word *man*, used in the broad sense, and the pronoun *he* have always been grammatically inclusive. It has taken years of social conditioning and widespread ignorance of the rules of grammar to make women, sensible by nature, take offense at such indifferent and ordinary terminology as *one-man* shop, *mailman*, *chairman*, etc.

So I hope you won't take the criticism too seriously. I also hope that the current absurd fashion of inclusive language will soon follow the fraudulent Neanderthal man—oops! I mean *Neanderthal* person—into obscurity and obsolescence.

—Mary Ann Tardiff, Willard, Kan.

I, for one, am very tired of our entire society having to be gender neutral in order to satisfy a political agenda. I am not in favor of terms such as *person access hole* in place of *manhole*. People who are so thin-skinned as to take offense to simple English language terms need to find themselves. What do they expect will be done with such terms as *man-of-war* jellyfish, *sex* bolts, *bastard* file, *man-eating* shark? I for one do not worship the *Goddess*.

Please do not capitulate: Do not roll over. Please do stay focused on fine woodworking, tools and tool techniques.

—Paul A. Rousseau, Foster City, Calif.

Bosch weighs in—I read Rex Alexander's tool review of the Bosch 1295DVS sander (*FWW* #155, p. 30) and was surprised to find that, in Alexander's view, the 1295DVS needed to be more aggressive. I wondered if he compared apples

with oranges when comparing it to his older Bosch sanders.

The 1295DVS—which, with the exception of the microfilter and variable speed switch—is technically identical to its predecessor, the 1295DH.

Alexander mentioned that frequent emptying of the canister was a nuisance. I find it important to note that random-orbit sanders equipped with a traditional bag or canister typically collect 50% of the dust generated. The rest remains in the air or the shop environment. The new Bosch microfilter system is over 80% efficient in collecting the dust. While this means the canister will have to be emptied more frequently, to me the added efficiency is worth it, especially in those applications in which the use of the vacuum-hose accessory is impractical.

A tip for cleaning the filter: Before opening the lid, tap the dust canister against the workbench. This will knock loose the dust in the microfilter's pleats and make emptying the canister easy and much cleaner than emptying a bag. In very humid environments, a puff of compressed air, applied from the outside of the microfilter, does the trick. This should restore the filter efficiency to peak performance.

—Frank Schnitzler, product manager—sanders, Bosch Power Tools

Not high-tech enough—With regard to Tom Begnal's article "10-in. Combination Tablesaw Blades" (*FWW* #155, pp. 32-37), I fear that *Fine Woodworking* has raised more questions than the magazine has given answers. I found that four issues should be addressed.

The test never defined what a combination blade is. The type of teeth used on the various blades was not clarified. Are they ATB, flat ground, whatever? A true combination blade is a Budke blade.

It seems that what was tested was

Writing an article

Fine Woodworking is a reader-written magazine. We welcome proposals, manuscripts, photographs and ideas from our readers, amateur or professional. We'll acknowledge all submissions and return those we can't publish. Send your contributions to *Fine Woodworking*, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

FREE TOOL CATALOG!

Your Best Work Starts With Us...

With over 8,000 of the finest woodworking tools in the world, Woodcraft can help you work more efficiently and skillfully than ever.

Call for your Free copy today.

1-800-542-9115



WOODCRAFT®
Helping You Make Wood Work®

www.woodcraft.com

Visit one of our stores located nationwide! Call us for the store nearest you.



Proud sponsor of "The American Woodshop" hosted by Scott Phillips on PBS.

560 Airport Ind. Park,
Dept. 02WW05Q,
PO Box 1686,
Parkersburg, WV
26102-1686

READER SERVICE NO. 148

Collect the dust before your Lungs do!



New!

2 hp collector

Get started today! Use our ductwork design service.

- Complete ductwork catalog

IWF 2002 Booth # 8048



1-800-732-4065

www.oneida-air.com

1001 W. Fayette St., Syracuse, NY 13204

Dust Collection Systems & Components 1.5 hp & larger

READER SERVICE NO. 192

"Waterlox brings out the most beautiful color of the wood."

— Frank Klausz,
Frank's Cabinet Shop



Worldwide Finishing Solutions

OUR STORY IS YOUR STORY...

At Waterlox, we're proud of our line of wood sealers and finishes, products we developed and have manufactured since 1916. Our greatest achievement lies in knowing our customers are completely satisfied. Their story is our story:

- Unique blend of resin and tung oil
- Durable, beautiful hand-rubbed look
- Simple to apply
- Minimal effort, maximum protection

Ask us about our Original Sealer/Finish, Satin and High Gloss Finishes. Contact us today by e-mail: info@waterlox.com or call 1-800-321-0377.

www.waterlox.com

READER SERVICE NO. 34

NEW

LittleRat™

By popular demand...



a compact version of the WoodRat with the versatility of its big brother and its own simple way of making the finest dovetails ever.

www.woodrat.com/freedrom

sales@woodrat.com

READER SERVICE NO. 54



THE BEST PLACE TO BUY DELTA TOOLS ONLINE

#36-431
Contractor's Saw

www.amazon.com/delta

Call for your FREE Tool Crib catalog

1-800-635-5140

TOOLS & HARDWARE
amazon.com

READER SERVICE NO. 159

blade sharpening proficiency and care, not so much the blade itself. I suspect this because I think that you did not buy the blades on the open market but rather asked for them from the manufacturers. This gave the makers an opportunity to provide a quality of sharpness not otherwise available. The product has to be bought for the test to be accurate.

At least one blade, the Everlast, was, I have been informed, created especially for the test and is not commercially available. It is not in the catalog.

And the last issue, which is equally important, what were the noise levels?

—John Grew Sheridan, San Francisco

ASSOCIATE EDITOR TOM BEGNAL REPLIES:

The article defined combination blades in lay terms: a cutter used for both ripping and crosscutting. Most of the saws tested, including the top performer, had a 40-tooth alternate-top-bevel configuration. But for this test I wasn't trying to analyze tooth configuration. I simply asked sawblade manufacturers to send me the smoothest-cutting combination blade they make, regardless of the tooth arrangement. The science of tooth configuration and performance is another article in and of itself.

The blades were indeed supplied by the manufacturers. And, perhaps I'm being naive here, but I have no reason to suspect that any of them would "tune-up" a blade before sending it to us. Yes, the sawblade market is a competitive one, but I am not yet ready to believe that manufacturers would practice such shenanigans.

The Everlast blade is commercially available. Simply call the number listed in the article.

I didn't test for noise because the focus of the article was smoothness of cut.

Industrial machinery information—

There are currently several magazines, including *Fine Woodworking*, that include tool reviews and head-to-head tool comparison articles. Whether you're a weekend woodworker or a small production cabinet/furniture shop, just a little reading can make the choice of which 14-in. bandsaw, 12-in. portable planer, 10-in. sliding compound-miter saw or 7¼-in. cir-

cular saw to purchase an easier one to make. However, I feel there are many people, myself included, who are looking for something just a little bit bigger and better than you can buy down at your local Home Depot.

The problem with these machines is the apparent lack of objective information about them available to us little guys. With names like Northfield, Mattison, Tannewitz, Guilliet, Pinheiro, Yates and Stetson Ross, how do we get information to make a decision on which ones to stay away from and which ones might provide dependable service for years to come? I realize a dedicated review per issue about these types of machines is probably too much to ask for, but I would very much appreciate any information you can pass along or publications you can recommend about these tools.

—Sean Ferguson, Rogue River, Ore.

EDITOR REPLIES: We plan to publish reviews of larger tools, such as combination machines, in the near future. But for the most part, we have to focus on the smaller and midsized tools that we know most of our readers are interested in. (Keeping up with just that category is a nearly impossible task!) You may find answers to your questions, however, by visiting our online discussion group, Knots, at www.finewoodworking.com. There you'll meet a community of very informed woodworkers willing to share their knowledge and unvarnished opinions.

More on pipe clamps—I am writing in reference to the Q&A "Pipe clamp slipping on galvanized pipe" (*FWW* #153, pp. 114, 116). A number of years ago, I also bought galvanized pipe in spite of the manufacturer's recommendation to use black pipe. I have several Jorgensen (Pony) ¾-in. clamps, which have a sliding plate type of clutch. My experience has been similar to Gary Rogowski's, only better. I really don't recall ever having a clamp head slip.

I have one pair of pipe clamps that has a cam-type sliding clutch. These have slipped. I learned to live with the problem by setting the cam tight before tightening the clamp, but black pipe would definitely be a better choice for them.

I have one short clamp made from aluminum conduit which works well, and I really like the light weight. I wouldn't recommend aluminum for a long clamp because of increased deflection.

—Dick Hagwell, Longview, Wash.

Insulting a woodworking master—I

was dismayed after reading Lon Schleining's review of Frank Klausz's video (*FWW* #154, p. 28). I replayed the entire video to refresh my memory of its content. It is obvious that the video is not about Frank the showman, but about Frank the dedicated teacher. While Frank does demonstrate free-hand grinding techniques in the video, he also shows how to grind a chisel with a Lee Valley jig.

Fine Woodworking magazine, along with craftsmen like Frank Klausz, have had a great impact on countless woodworkers. Those who choose to master the skills so well explained in the video will surely find themselves elevated to a higher level of woodworking.

—Bill Bigelow, Madison, N.J.

EDITOR REPLIES: Frank Klausz does indeed show two ways to grind edge tools. We regret the error.

Clarification on LVLP spraying—In the November/December 2001 issue (*FWW* #152, p. 121) an article on LVLP spraying incorrectly stated one aspect of setting up a Binks Mach 1 spray gun. If you wish to convert this gun from HVLP to LVLP, do not replace the needle. The standard needle is all that's required, and no other is available.

About your safety:

Working wood is inherently dangerous. Using hand or power tools improperly or ignoring standard safety practices can lead to permanent injury or even death. Don't try to perform operations you learn about here (or elsewhere) until you're certain they are safe for you. If something about an operation doesn't feel right, don't do it. Look for another way. We want you to enjoy the craft, so please keep safety foremost in your mind whenever you're in the shop.

—Anatole Burkin, executive editor

Model	Description	Sale
22-580	NEW 13" Planer - 2 speed.....	449
40-570	16" Scroll Saw.....	225
36-255	12" Compound Miter Saw.....	309
11-985	10" Drill Press.....	125
50-868	3-speed Air Cleaner.....	299
23-710	Sharpening Center.....	158
11-990	12" Bench Drill Press.....	199
22-560	12-1/2" Planer with extra knives.....	299
22-565	22-560 Planer with stand.....	319
14-650	Hollow Chisel Mortiser with chisels and bits.....	239
17-900	16-1/2" Floor Drill Press.....	395
17-965	16-1/2" Floor Drill Press - var. spd.....	69
17-924	Mortise Chisel Kit.....	69
31-780	Oscillating Spindle Sander with FREE 31-781 spindle set.....	199
36-444	10" Contractors Table Saw.....	599
31-250	18" Drum Sander.....	789
31-252	18" Drum Sander with extension shaft, premium drum & dust tray.....	849
28-278	14" Band Saw 3/4 HP.....	595
37-190	6" Deluxe Jointer.....	449
37-195	6" Professional Jointer.....	549
50-850	1-1/2 HP Dust Collector.....	295
34-184	Tenoning Jig.....	105
22-680	15" Planer.....	1199
46-715	NEW 14" Wood Lathe.....	649

36-426	10" Limited Edition Contractors Table Saw w/ 30" unfence, cast iron wing, table board & carbide blade.....	849
28-299	14" Limited Edition Band Saw - 1 HP w/ mobile base and rip fence.....	849
33-830	10" Radial Arm Saw.....	749

Model	Description	Sale
36-841	10" 3 HP Limited Edition Unisaw with 52" Unifence, table boards, mobile base and carbide blade.....	1699
36-843	10" 3 HP Limited Edition Unisaw with 50" Biesemeyer fence, table boards, mobile base and carbide blade.....	1699
36-844	10" 3 HP Limited Edition Left Tilt Unisaw with 50" Biesemeyer fence, table board, mobile base and carbide blade.....	1699
36-845	10" 5 HP Limited Edition Left Tilt Unisaw with 50" Biesemeyer fence, table board and 3 carbide blades.....	1999
43-437	3 HP Limited Edition Wood Shaper with mobile base and router spindle assembly.....	1599
32-325	Line Boring Machine.....	1029
37-350A	8" Jointer - DJ20.....	1449
36-850	Stock Feeder, 1/4 HP.....	479
36-851	Stock Feeder, 1 HP.....	749

Model	Description	Sale
0512-21	14.4 volt Cordless Drill Kit with 1.7 Ah batteries.....	165
0516-22	14.4 volt Cordless Drill Kit with 2.4 Ah batteries.....	189
6537-22	Super Sawzall.....	169
6521-21	Super Sawzall w/ orbital.....	185
0201-20	3/8" Drill 0-2500 rpm.....	109
0234-6	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-850 rpm.....	135
0235-6	1/2" Drill w/keyless chuck.....	145
0244-1	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-600 rpm.....	148
0233-20	3/8" Drill 5.5 amp.....	89
0301-20	1/2" Drill 8.0 amp.....	159
0375-6	3/8" close quarter Drill.....	159
6176-20	14" Chop Saw.....	169
6546-6	Screwdriver 200 & 400 rpm.....	89
6547-22	6546-6 Kit with 2 batteries.....	118
6390-21	7-1/4" Circular Saw w/ case.....	139
5371-6	1/2" v/spd Hammer Drill Kit.....	189
6490-6	10" Miter Saw.....	269

Model	Description	Sale
5615-20	1-3/4 HP, 2-handle.....	159
5615-21	1-3/4 HP, 2-handle with case.....	169
5619-20	1-3/4 HP, D-handle.....	169

Model	Description	Teeth	Sale
LU82M010	Cut-off 10"	60	32
LU84M011	Combination 10"	50	45
LU85R010	Super Cut-off 10"	80	69
LU85R012	Super Cut-off 12"	96	99
LM72M010	Ripping 10"	24	39
LU87R010	Thin Kerf 10"	24	49
LU88R010	Thin Kerf 10"	60	55
LU98R010	Ultimate 10"	80	79
LU91M008	Compnd Mite 8-1/2"	48	40
LU91M010	Compnd Mite 10"	60	54
SD308	8" Carbide Dado.....	125	
SD506	6" Carbide Super Dado.....	159	
SD508	8" Carbide Super Dado.....	175	

Model	Description	Sale
5090DW	9.6 volt 3-3/8" Saw Kit.....	139
DA391D	9.6 volt 3/8 angle Drill.....	85
DA391DW	9.6 volt 3/8" angle Drill Kit.....	139
6095DWE	9.6 volt 3/8" Drill Kit w/ 2 batt.....	125
6095DWLE	6095DWE with flashlight.....	135
632007-A	9.6 volt Battery.....	35
632002-4	7.2 volt Battery.....	32
6343DWA	18 volt 1/2" Drill Kit.....	259

Model	Description	Sale
9902	3"x21" Belt Sander w/bag.....	179
9924DB	3"x24" Belt Sander w/bag.....	179
N1900B	3-1/4" Planer with case.....	142
1912B	4-1/8" Planer.....	219
N9514B	4" Disc Grinder 4.6 amp.....	65
DA3000R	3/8" Angle Drill.....	189
5007NBK	7-1/4" Circ Saw.....	125
LS1011N	10" Slide Compound Saw.....	449
3612C	3" Plunge Router.....	259
LS1013	10" Dual Compound Slide Miter Saw.....	529
BO5010	5" Random Orbit Sander.....	69
LS1220	12" Compound Miter Saw.....	335
9227C	7/9" Polisher.....	195
2703	10" Table Saw.....	325
LS1212	12" Compnd Slide Miter Saw.....	699
5057KB	7-1/4" Pad for Hardi board.....	279
2012NB	12" Planer.....	489
RF1101	2-1/4 HP var. speed Router.....	209
RD1101	Above Router w/ "D" handle.....	219
RF1101KIT	RF1101 with fixed base and plunge base.....	289

Model	Description	Sale
SFN30	Finishing Nailer w/ case 1" to 2".....	199
SLP20	Pinner w/ case 5/8" to 1-5/8".....	149
SKS	Stapler 5/8" to 1-1/2".....	269
SN700XL	"FramePro" - Full 2" to 3-1/2".....	399
601	"FramePro" - Clip 2" to 3-1/2".....	279
SFN40	Finish Nailer 1-1/4" to 2-1/2".....	259

Model	Description	Sale
54-135K	20v Level Package.....	229
LM500PKG	Rotary Laser Level Pkg.....	899
57-LM101	Wizard Interior Rotary Laser Level Package.....	215
57-LM10E	Wizard Exterior Rotary Laser Level Package.....	419
58-GIZ-3PKG	Gizmo 3 Laser Level Pkg.....	369
LC635LP	LaserCross Rotary Level.....	129
11-635K	Laser Plumb Bob w/ case.....	82

Item#	Jaw Length	Opening Capacity	Sale	Box of 6
#0	8"	4-1/2"	13.95	75.30
#1	10"	6"	16.95	91.50
#2	12"	8-1/2"	18.50	99.95
#3	14"	10"	22.50	121.50

Model	Description	Sale	Box of 6
50	3/4" Black Pipe.....	9.99	109.00
52	1/2" Black Pipe.....	8.99	97.00

Item#	Jaw Length	Sale	Box of 6
3712	12"	8.99	48.75
3718	18"	9.99	53.95
3724	24"	10.99	59.50
3730	30"	11.99	64.95
3736	36"	12.99	70.50

Model	Description	Sale
EY6535NQKW	NEW 15.6V Multi Drill.....	289
EY6431NQKW	1/2" 15.6V Drill Kit with two 3.0 Ah Ni-MH batteries, 45 minute charger, & case.....	205
EY6407NQKW	1/2" 12V Drill Kit with two 3.0 Ah Ni-MH batteries, 45 minute charger, & case.....	189
EY6406NQKW	3/8" 12V Drill Kit with two 2.0 Ah Ni-Cd batteries, 30 minute charger, & case.....	159
EYC133	5-3/8" 15.6V Wood Cutting Saw and Drill Kit.....	379
EY3790B	12 Volt Lantern.....	19.95
EY3793B	15.6 Volt Lantern.....	19.95

Model	Description	Sale
T-SQUARE 52	52" Homeshop.....	285
T-SQUARE 40	40" Homeshop.....	275
T-SQUARE 28	28" Homeshop.....	265

Model	Description	Sale
C8FB2	8-1/2" Slide Compound Saw.....	459
C10FS	10" Slide Compound Saw.....	519
C15FB	15" Miter Saw.....	599
EC12	2 HP, 4 gallon Compressor.....	249
NR83A	Framing Nailer - Full Head.....	359

Model	Description	Sale
25010	10" die cast Torpedo Level.....	19.95
24620	16" Professional Level.....	15
24640	24" Level w/ hand holes.....	48.95
24670	48" Level w/ hand holes.....	62
24816	Level package: 24670 and 24620.....	69
40310	Compact Laser Level w/ prism.....	279
24632	"Jambor Set" designed for setting door jams. Includes 78" level and 32" level.....	129
37632	Same as above but magnetic.....	159

2002 TOOL CATALOG AVAILABLE
Call Toll-Free 1-800-328-0457 In Minn. Call 651 224-4859
FAX: 651 224-8263 www.comershaw.com
CHECK MONEY ORDER VISA MASTERCARD DISCOVER
SEVEN CORNERS ACE HDWE, Inc.
216 West 7th St. St. Paul, MN 55102 Est. 1933

We are one of the last mail order companies to provide FREE FREIGHT!
We now stock Delta Industrial Machinery and Powermatic Machines.

TOOLS ON SALE
AMERICA'S LOWEST PRICED TOOLS
FREE FREIGHT TO THE 48 CONTINENTAL STATES ON EVERY ITEM
PRICES SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE

Model	Description	Sale
DW124K	1/2" right angle Drill.....	339
DW321K	Top Handle Jigsaw Kit.....	155
DW364	7-1/4" Circ. Saw w/ brake.....	155
DW364K	DW364 Saw with case.....	166
DW378G	7-1/4" Framers' Saw.....	159
DW610	1-1/2 HP 2-handle Router.....	152
DW411K	1/4 sheet Palm Sander w/case.....	58
DW682K	Biscuit Joiner with case.....	169
DW705S	12" Compnd Mite Saw with carbide blade, dustbag, & extension.....	299
DW621	2 HP Plunge Router.....	199
DW621K	DW621 Router with edge guide and case.....	234
DW680K	3-1/4" heavy duty Planer.....	155
DW276	Drywall Gun, 0-2500, 6.5 amp.....	99
DW703	10" Miter Saw.....	229
DW706	12" Double Bevel Compound Miter Saw.....	419
DW920K-2	7.2V Split Screwdriver.....	105

Model	Description	Sale
DW980K-2	12 volt 1/2" variable speed with two batteries and case.....	169
DW983K-2	14.4 volt 1/2" variable speed with two batteries and case.....	199
DW987K-2	18 volt 1/2" variable speed with two batteries and case.....	269
DW988K-2	18V 1/2" Drill/Hammer Drill Kit.....	289

Model	Description	Sale
DW708	12" Slide Miter Saw.....	599
DW788	20" Scroll Saw.....	449
DW733	12" Planer with extra blades.....	399
DW744	10" Portable Table Saw.....	499

Model	Description	Sale
D51845	Full Round Head Framing Nail.....	329
D51275K15	15 gauge Finish Nailer.....	249
D51256K16	16 gauge Finish Nailer.....	199
D51238K18	18 gauge Brad Nailer.....	144
D55155	2 HP, 4 gallon Compressor.....	349
D55153	4 HP, 4 gallon Twin Stack Comp.....	309

Model	Description	Sale
1660760	3 HP Model 66 Table Saw.....	2099
1660791	5 HP Model 66 Table Saw.....	2199
1790263	719A Chisel Mortiser w/bit set.....	799
1791279	6" Model 54A Long-bed Jointer.....	749
1791277GK10	Contractors Saw w/ 30" fence, table board and blade.....	899

Model	Description	Sale
LP6-20XLA	Sight Level Package - 20x.....	285
LT8-300P	Level Transit - 26x.....	679
4810-3	ML600 Visible Beam Laser.....	859
4700-2	Auto 900 Visible Beam Laser.....	1139
ALP8-22	22x Auto Level w/ tripod & rod.....	295
ALP8-26	26x Auto Level w/ tripod & rod.....	309
ALP8-28	28x Auto Level w/ tripod & rod.....	349

Model	Description	Sale
1587AVSC	Top Handle "CLIC" Jig Saw Kit with case and 9 Progressor blades.....	155

Model	Description	Sale
1584V5S	Barrel "CLIC" Jig Saw.....	155
Bosch Metal Case	for above Jig Saws.....	24
Bosch 30 blade assortment	for Jig Saws.....	29.99
1619EVS	3-1/2 HP variable speed Plunge Router.....	319
1274DVS	3"x21" var. speed Belt Sander.....	159
1278VSK	1-1/2"x12" Belt Sander.....	129
1275DVS	3"x24" var. speed Belt Sander.....	215
1276DVS	4"x24" v/s Belt Sander.....	225
1194AVSRK	1/2" var. speed Drill w/ case.....	159
3107DVS	5" Random Orbit Sander.....	99
3725DVS	5" Random Orbit Sander.....	145
3727DVS	6" Random Orbit Sander.....	149
3915	10" Slide Compound Saw.....	479
3912	12" Compound Mite Saw.....	309
11224VSR7/8"	SDS Rotary Drill.....	229
1347AK	4-1/2" Grinder with case.....	92
1633AEV52	HP Plunge Router.....	199
1617	1-3/4 HP Router - 2 handle.....	159
1617EVS	2 HP Router with variable speed, 2 handle.....	184
1618	1-3/4 HP Router "D" handle.....	179
1618EVS	1618 router w/ variable speed.....	205
4000	10" Table Saw.....	495
1677M	NEW 7-1/4" Worm Drive Saw.....	199
3960C-CC	24 volt Drill Kit.....	299
3960CFK	24 volt Drill & Circular Saw Kit with coupon for FREE Recipro Saw.....	499

Model	Description	Sale
1617PK	2 HP Router Kit.....	229
1617EVS	2 HP variable speed Router Kit.....	249

Model	Description	Sale
750	1/4 HP, 200 CFM - 750 CFM.....	259
8-12	1/4 HP, 800 & 1200 CFM.....	489

Model	Description	Sale
16-32	Plus Drum Sander with stand, casters, and paper.....	799

Model	Description	Sale
JJ6CSX	6" Jointer - closed stand and extra knives.....	499
JJ8CS	8" Jointer - closed stand.....	1299

Model	Description	Sale
JWBS140S	14" Band Saw 3/4 HP - open stand.....	529
JWBS14CSK	14" Band Saw 1 HP - closed stand with rip fence and miter gauge.....	599

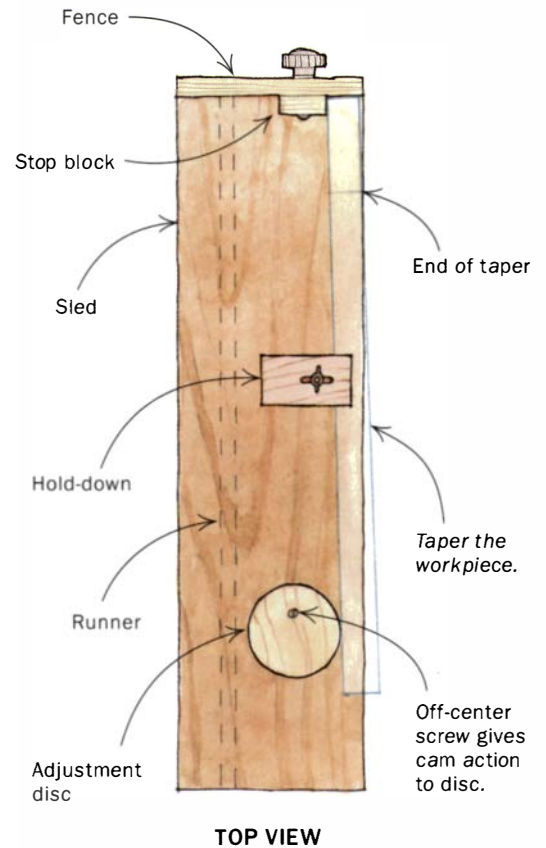
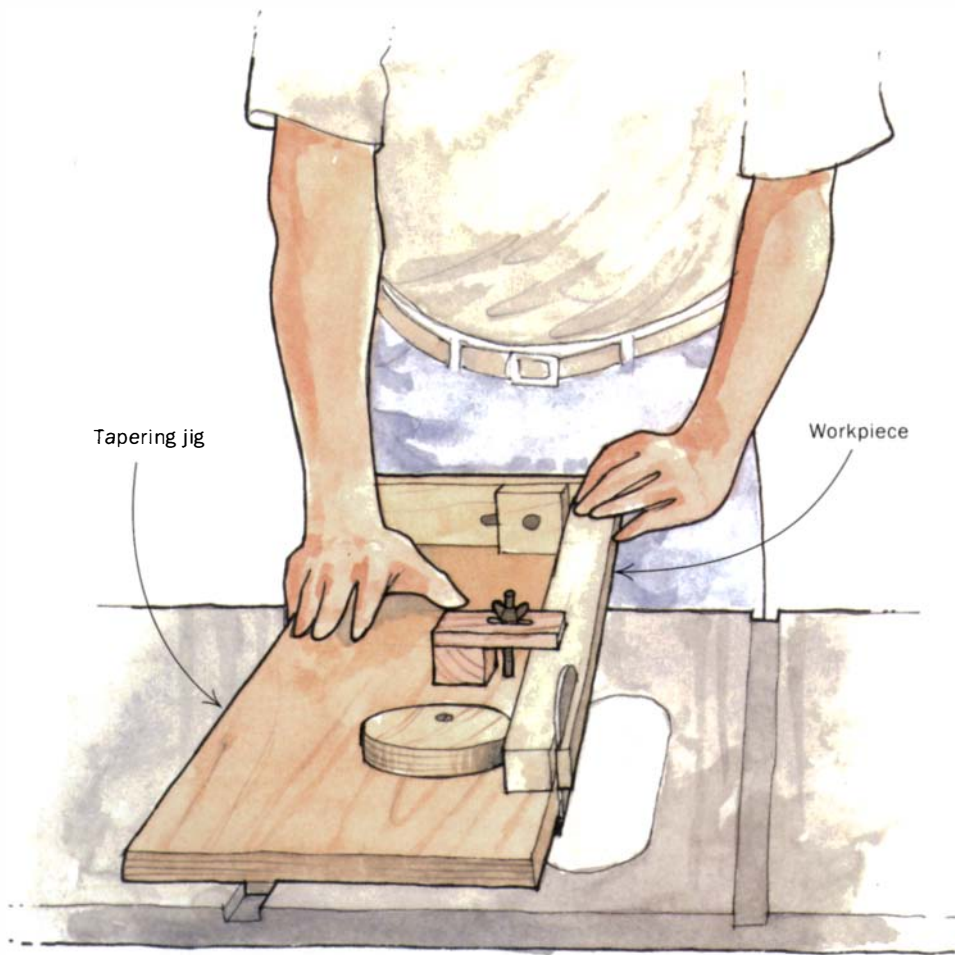
Model	Description	Sale
JWTS10CW2PF	10" Contractor Table Saw with 30" Exacta fence 1-1/2 HP & cast iron wings.....	899

Model	Description	Sale
JTAS10X501	10" Tilting Arbor 3 HP Table Saw with 50" Exacta fence, table, and legs.....	1499
JDP17MF	16-1/2" Drill Press 3/4 HP - 16 speed with bits and mortise attachment.....	399
DC-650	Dust Collector, 1 HP, 650 CFM.....	225
DC1100	1-1/2 HP, 1100 CFM Dust Collector w/ accessory kit.....	299
AFS-1000B	Air Cleaner, 770 CFM.....	239

Model	Description	Sale
BN200V12	NEW 12V Cordless Brad Nailer.....	269

9290	NEW 19V Cordless Router	289
3812	10" Portable Table Saw	399
9444VS	Var/spd Profile Sander Kit	128
690	1-1/2 HP Router 8 amp	155
6931	Plunge Router Base	89
693PK	690 and 6931 plus case	199
691	1-1/2 HP Router D-handle	179
698	Heavy Duty Shaper Table	149
352VS	3"x21" v/s Belt Sander with bag	189
360	3"x24" Belt Sander with bag	239
360VS	360 Sander w/ variable speed	249
362	4"x24" Belt Sander with bag	239
362VS	362 Sander w/ variable speed	255
9125	3-1/4" Planer Kit with case	155
505	1/2 sheet Pad Sander	165
330	Speed Block Sander 1/4 sheet	85
557	Plate Joiner with tilt fence	209
5563	Face frame plates for 557	7.99
5554	1000 assorted biscuits	29
7529	2 HP variable speed Plunge Router	225
97529	Router with guide, dust	

Adjustable jig for cutting tapers



This adjustable tapering jig for the tablesaw is easy to make and sets up in a flash. It replaces all of those dedicated one-time jigs, and it's more reliable than a jig that puts the blank directly on the tabletop.

The fixture is basically a sled with a runner on the bottom that slides in the miter-gauge slot. This arrangement ensures that the edge of the sled is snug against the blade every time. No fence adjustments are required. The jig consists of five main parts: The sled, the runner, a fence at the front that incorporates an adjustable stop block, a hold-down and a cam-action disc at the back that sets the taper angle.

To make the fixture, first cut the 30-in.-long sled from $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick plywood and an equally long hardwood runner to fit the miter-gauge slot. Put the runner in the miter slot, raise the sawblade all

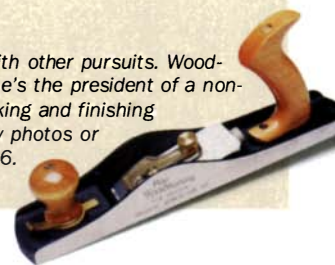
the way up and, with the edge of the sled square against the blade, nail two brads through the sled into the runner to attach it temporarily. Remove the sled, invert and secure the runner with four countersunk screws. Now attach the fence assembly to the front and the disc to the back. Secure the $3\frac{1}{2}$ -in.-dia. disc with a wood screw $\frac{3}{4}$ in. off center that creates a cam action that will vary the depth of the taper cut.

To use the jig, first adjust and lock the stop block on the fence to set where the taper will end. Then, with one end of the workpiece against the stop block and the other end against the disc, turn the disc until the finished width of the leg is in line with the edge of the sled. Readjust both stops, if necessary, until everything is perfect. Now push the workpiece blank against the two stops, lock it down and cut the taper. Turn the blank 90° clockwise and make a



A reward for the best tip

David Hastings is retired from a 42-year career of many different business ventures, but he remains active with other pursuits. Woodworking is only one of his hobbies. He also plays tennis and races his 1951 MG roadster. In addition to that, he's the president of a non-profit adult education program near his home in suburban Philadelphia, and he keeps busy by taking woodworking and finishing courses given by many of the people who write for Fine Woodworking. Send us your best tip, along with any photos or sketches (we'll redraw them) to Methods of Work, Fine Woodworking, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.





Authentic Colonial and Shaker Finish
in Powder Form- just add water and mix!
16 Deep, Rich Colors

The Old Fashioned Milk Paint Company, Inc.
Dept. FW Box 222 Groton, MA 01450
Tel. (978)448-6336 Fax (978-448-2754

www.milkpaint.com

The Original- Nothing else even comes close!

READER SERVICE NO. 184

Operate 3-Phase Shop Motors from Single Phase Power
Different Models To Fit Your Needs

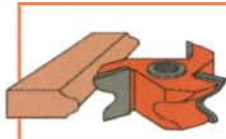
The Ronk ROTO-CON®

Rotary Phase Converter will provide 3-phase power from single-phase sources to operate single or multiple motor applications found in woodworking shops.

The Ronk Phase-Shifter is a medium-duty static-type converter for shop applications such as drill presses, mills, saws, etc., where continuous full load use is not required, but low initial cost is important.

RE ROKK 1-800-221-RONK EXT. 219
ELECTRICAL INDUSTRIES, INC. www.ronkelectrical.com
P.O. Box 160, Dept. 219 • Nokomis, IL 62075 • Ph: 217/563-8333 Ext. 219 • Fax: 217/563-8336

READER SERVICE NO. 79



We Manufacture & Service
SHAPER KNIVES
MOULDER KNIVES

Williams & Hussey
Profile Knives

We now distribute
FREEBORN
Cutters

FOLEY BELSAW • MOULDER HEADS
RBI & WOODMASTER KNIVES
LOCK EDGE COLLARS
ROSETTE CUTTERS
CUSTOM ROUTERS &
CUSTOM CUTTERS

Quick Turnaround Time
Top Quality Products
at Competitive Prices

W. Moore Profiles LTD.
1 Commercial Drive,
P.O. Box 752, Florida, NY 10921
www.wmooreprofiles.com **1-800-228-8151**
Serving the Industry for over 10 Years - Fax (845) 651-1097

READER SERVICE NO. 21

YESTERMORROW
DESIGN/BUILD SCHOOL

Courses for novices & professionals
FURNITURE • CABINETRY
RUSTIC FURNITURE
WOOD TURNING
BURTON'S ROUTER RODEO
PLUS 60 OTHER COURSES

Classes run
2 days to
2 weeks
year round

FREE CATALOG
888-496-5541
WWW.YESTERMORROW.ORG
WARREN, VERMONT

READER SERVICE NO. 109

4-WAY MONEY-MAKER!



- **Molds**
- **Planes**
- **Sands**
- **Saws**

Now, turn a \$5 rough board into \$75 worth of high-dollar molding in less than one minute! Make over 350 standard patterns, picture frame stock, any custom design. Quickly converts from Planer/Molder to Drum Sander or Gang Rip Saw! Choose from 12", 18" and 25" Models.

Variable Feed Makes The Difference!
Just a twist of the dial adjusts the Woodmaster from 70 to over 1,000 cuts per inch. Produces a glass-smooth finish on tricky grain patterns no other planer can handle. **Five Year Warranty.**
Prouder Than Ever To Be Made In America!
FREE FACT KIT!
1-800-821-6651 ext. PE96
Woodmaster Tools, Inc. 1431 N. Topping Ave. Kansas City, MO 64120

READER SERVICE NO. 179

Northend Hardwoods

Cabinet Hardwood Lumber and Plywood
Custom Millwork ♦ Custom Doors
Flooring ♦ Stair Parts
All Made to Order

Main Milling Facility
Lyndonville, VT 05851
1-800-626-3275

Branch Office
Williston, VT 05495
1-800-265-7430

We Ship Any Amount - Anywhere

READER SERVICE NO. 49

Fein 

www.feinus.com

1-800-441-9878

READER SERVICE NO. 155

The Cutting Edge in Bandsaws

MiniMax

A Name YOU Can Trust, A Product YOU can Depend On!



MM 16
16" Bandsaw

- Made in Italy
- Large Resaw Capacity
- Wide Blade Range
- European Guides
- Foot Brake
- Rack-n-Pinion
- Dynamically Balanced Cast Iron Wheels
- Cast Iron Trunion, Fence & Table
- A Complete Range From 16" - 36" Bandsaws
- 65 yrs of Experience

For Info Call NOW

Call Toll Free!
866-WRK-WOOD
(975-9663)

A Wealth of Knowledge Made Affordable

MiniMax
2012 Eisenhower Circle
Austin, TX 78758

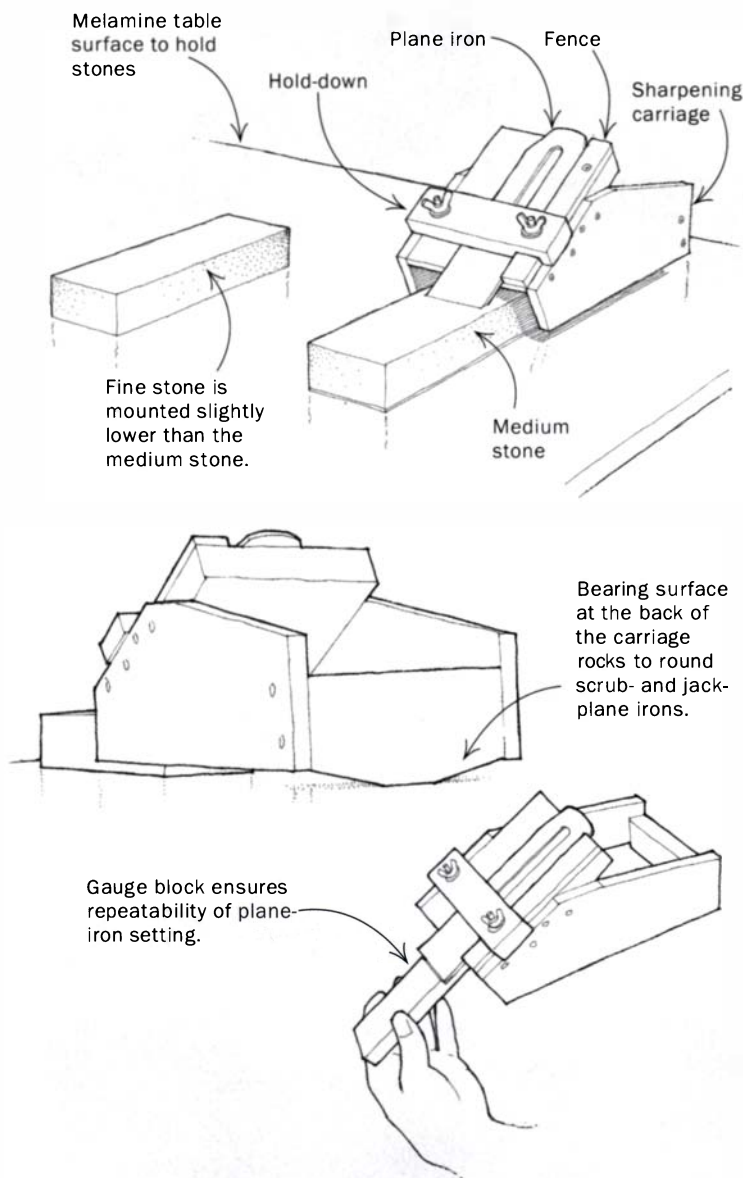
READER SERVICE NO. 127

Methods of Work (continued)

second cut. This will produce a leg that is beautifully tapered on two sides. To make a leg that is tapered on four sides, you will need to readjust the disc for cuts three and four.

—David Hastings, Haverford, Pa.

Shop-built sharpening carriage



The main difficulty I had in sharpening plane irons and chisels was maintaining a consistent sharpening angle. I could get the tools sharp enough initially, but I didn't like the concave bevel that would result. Also, the bevel tended to get higher and higher as time went by, eventually requiring a serious session on the grinder.

So I finally made this sharpening carriage that solved my problems when I used it with a carefully set up stone table. The stone table is fitted with two stones: a medium stone to restore the tool's main bevel and a fine stone to hone a final microbevel. The trick is to mount the fine stone $\frac{3}{8}$ in. lower than the medium stone. This automatically produces a microbevel of 1° without moving the blade in the jig.

This sharpening setup has other advantages. It produces a flat main bevel rather than the weaker concave bevel that is produced on a grinder. Also, because the jig straddles the stone, it eliminates the oily mess created by a roller riding on the stone.

The carriage is simple to make. Cut the sides from $\frac{3}{8}$ -in.-thick plywood and the other pieces from scrap hardwood. Lay out the front ramp of the fixture at your preferred bevel angle (30° in my case). Add an alignment fence for a plane iron and a hold-down device on the top of the angled ramp. One optional feature to include is a narrow bearing surface at the back, as shown in the drawing. This allows you to rock the plane iron from side to side to create a rounded cutting edge for scrub and jack planes.

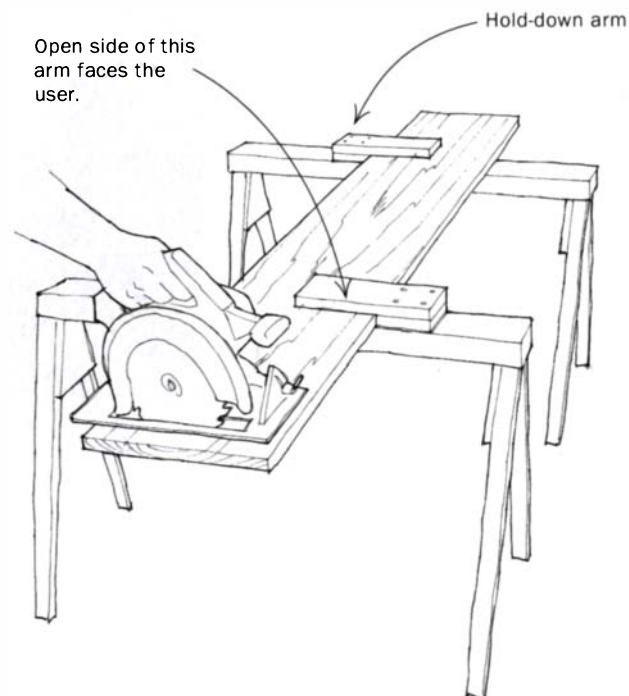
I made up three versions of this jig: One for 30° plane irons, another for 30° chisels (with the bed cut away to accommodate the handles) and yet another for 25° paring chisels. Of course, dimensions and angles can be adjusted easily to suit your preferences and individual tools.

To make the stone table, mount the two stones in routed troughs of different depths in a piece of melamine. My stones are 7 in. apart and 11 in. from the front edge. The medium-grit stone is $1\frac{1}{16}$ in. high, and the fine stone is $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. high.

To use the jig, adjust the plane iron in the jig for an angle of 30° on the fine stone. Make a gauge block to ensure repeatability of the blade projection. Starting with the plane iron on the medium stone, move the carriage back and forth until you have restored the main bevel. Then, without adjusting the plane iron, move the carriage to the fine stone and hone a short microbevel.

—Bruce Tombleson, Bussiere Galant, France

Sawhorse crosscutting aids



These two hold-down arms are mounted on sawhorses to enable clamp-free crosscutting of long boards. To make them, screw to-

Foreign & Domestic HARDWOODS

LUMBER & VENEERS
ALL TYPES & ALL SIZES

• Custom Milled • Shipped Anywhere!

Call 914-946-4111

Fax 914-946-3779

ASK FOR OUR COLOR CATALOG!

M.L. GORDON
COMPANY Inc.

262 Ferris Avenue • White Plains, NY 10603

READER SERVICE NO. 95



American Woodworker Feb 2001

KATIE

www.katiejig.com

Phone: 317-881-8601

READER SERVICE NO. 45

Limitless Possibilities



Unleash your dreams

with the ultimate five-in-one combination machine. This compact, workhorse has the five main tools needed to create masterpieces. The X-31 gives you:

- A 12" jointer to prepare your lumber
- A 12" planer to dimension your lumber
- A 3 HP shaper to make any shape
- A mortiser to make the best joints obtainable
- A 10" table saw with a 50" sliding table panel saw
- 10-second change-over time
- 3 separate motors 3 HP each

Free Video

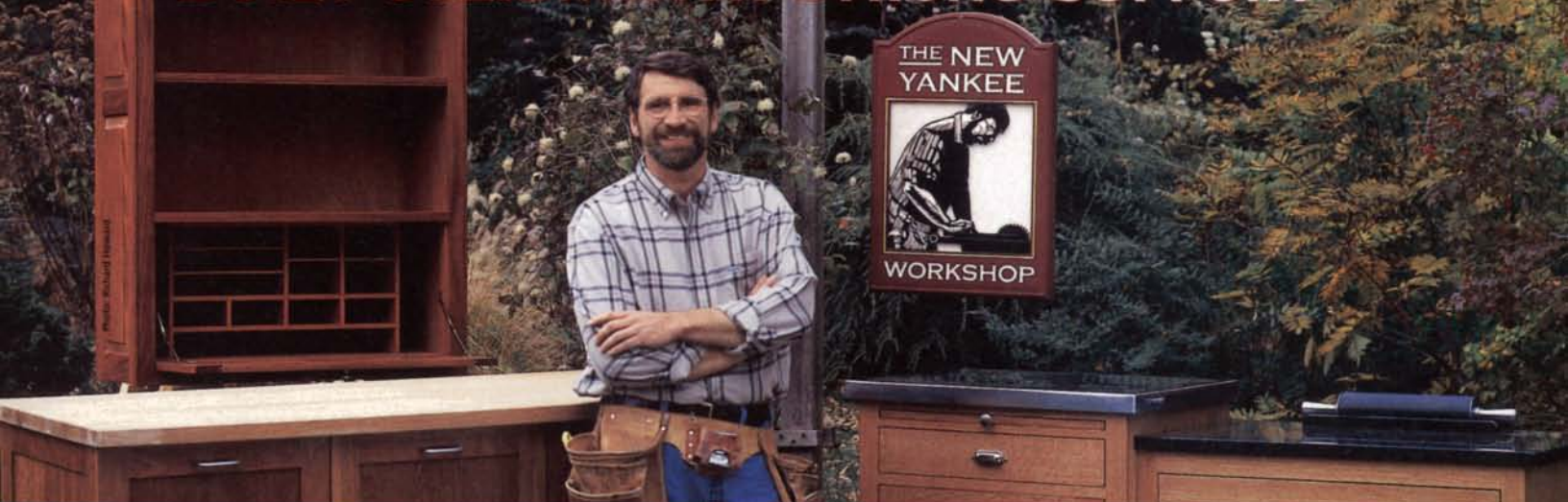
17101 Murphy Ave.
Irvine, CA 92614
(949) 474-1200

LAGUNA TOOLS
Fine European Woodworking Machinery
800-234-1976

www.lagunatools.com
E-mail:
mail@lagunatools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 207

THE NEW YANKEE WORKSHOP BUILT SOLID...WITH STRONG SUPPORT



For more than a dozen years, Norm Abram has invited viewers into his workshop to offer step-by-step instructions on building furniture and other woodworking projects. None of this would have been possible without the solid help of loyal underwriters.

Columbia Forest Products is proud to sponsor The New Yankee Workshop. After more than forty years in business, Columbia is the largest manufacturer of hardwood plywood and veneer in North America, and a maker of solid, engineered and laminate flooring. And, through its continued support of The New Yankee Workshop, Columbia Forest Products celebrates the woodworker in everyone.

East 1-800-237-2428 • West 1-800-547-1791 • Canada 1-888-664-1964 • Columbia Flooring 1-800-654-8796
www.columbiaforestproducts.com

READER SERVICE NO. 194

columbia
FOREST PRODUCTS

Methods of Work (continued)

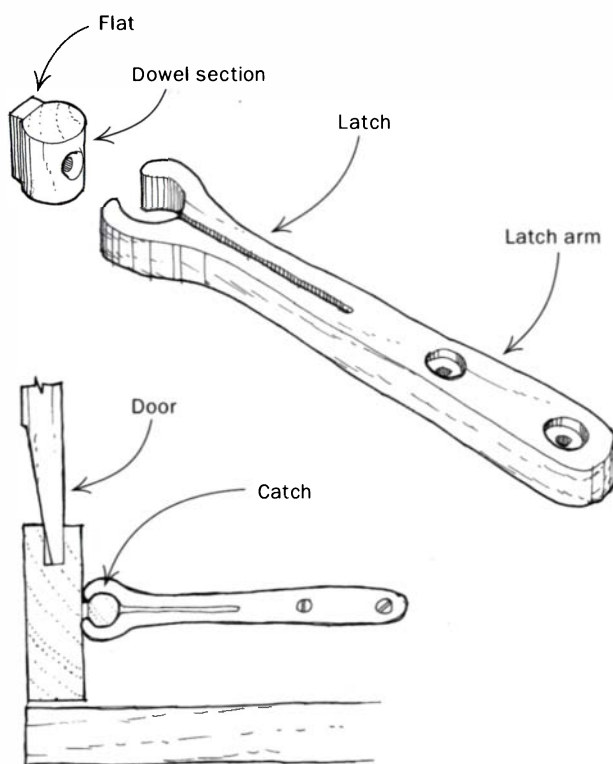
gether two arms from scrap offcuts the same thickness as the stock to be cut. Mount the arms to your sawhorses with a thin shim under each one, so that the workpiece will slide under the arms easily. The arms should be mounted in opposite directions—open to you on the near end and closed on the far end (as shown). Properly set up, these arms will lock the board in place and prevent it from pivoting or lifting.

—Louis Pennacchia Jr., Syracuse, N.Y.

Quick tip: To keep dust and fog off the lenses of your glasses, spray with a product called Rain-X and wipe off. It works better than anything else that I have tried. The product is available wherever car parts are sold.

—Richard Dininny, Elmira, N.Y.

Wooden cabinet latch

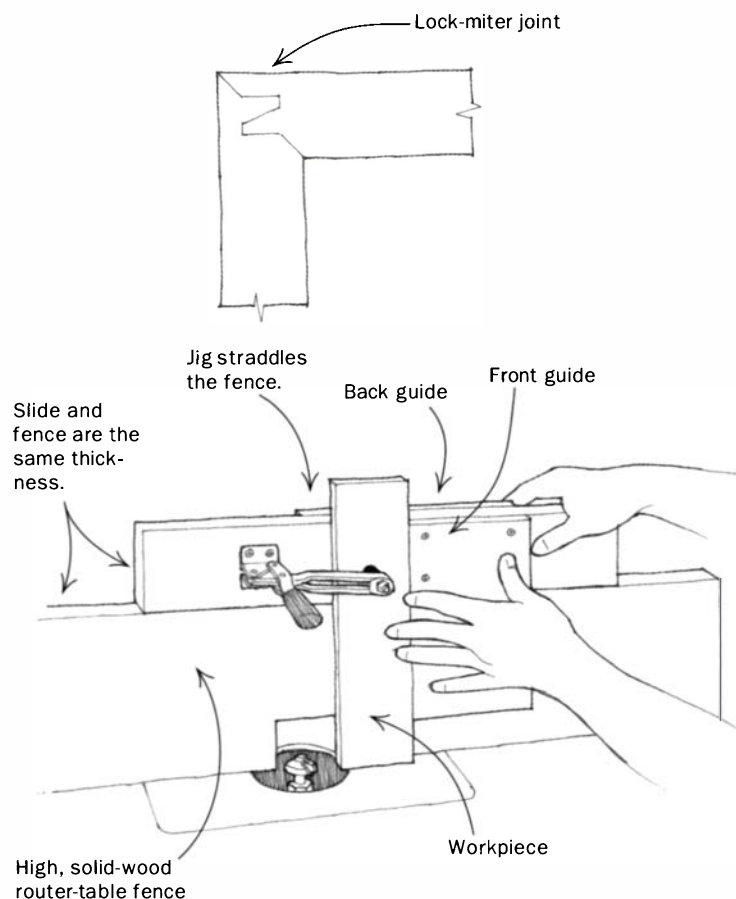


I first made this wooden latch several years ago when I couldn't use the traditional turn latch on a reproduction antique cabinet. The latch has functioned so well over the years that I have begun using the design in other cabinets. The body of the latch is a 5-in.-long piece of ½-in.-thick walnut, a wood I chose for its shock resistance. It is attached to the top or bottom of the case interior. The length of the slot, which gives the latch its spring action, is about half the total length of the body. The width of the opening can be modified for the amount of tension desired. The catch is just a wooden dowel with a flat piece glued to it.

—Bernard Resh, Lancaster, Pa.

Jig for routing lock-miter joints

Here is a simple jig that enables the safe and accurate cutting of lock-miter corner joints that require both a horizontal and a vertical pass over the router bit. Cutting these joints by holding boards



in a vertical position with just your hands is a daunting task. The operation can be dangerous, and the results can be inaccurate.

This jig requires a sturdy, extrahigh router-table fence. Mine is 6½ in. high and more than 1½ in. thick. The jig carriage consists of an 18-in.-long slide, cut from the same stock as the fence to ensure identical thickness. The front and back guides are 5-in. by 8-in. chunks of ½-in.-thick plywood. One De-Sta-Co clamp holds the workpiece tightly against the jig. Because the carriage fits snugly over the top edge of the fence, only light hand pressure is needed to hold the lower part of the board against the fence as it engages the bit. You can accommodate workpieces of different widths by moving the clamp.

—Norman Ellis, Tuscaloosa, Ala.

Quick tip: When using a hand scraper, wear cotton gloves with PVC dots. The gloves effectively dissipate the heat that is generated, give you a better grip and keep your hands dry and cool.

—W.D. Timberlake, Houston, Texas

Miniature shaving horse

For those chair makers who like to work standing up or who don't have space for a full-sized shaving horse, this little version (see p. 20)—made to be held in a bench vise—is both compact and portable. To use it, simply clamp the keel in the bench vise, push back the lever arm to raise the upper jaw of the jig and lower it onto the workpiece. The spring mechanism closes the jaw automatically and provides gripping force.

The key feature of the horse is a ⅝-in.-dia. steel shaft that goes

DON'T JUST IMAGINE IT ROUT IT!

with Viper® Carbide Router Bits

Over 400 profiles to choose from



Straight

Forming



Grooving



*Laminate
& Trim*



Bring out the beauty of the wood in your projects. Signs, picture frames, moldings, furniture, cabinet doors. Simple or complex, if you can imagine it, you can rout it with Viper router bits. With finely honed RazorSmooth carbide edges, high-strength brazing, precisely machined anti-kick bodies and anti-stick coating, Viper consistently delivers clean, smooth, burn-free cuts. And Viper bits are made with care in West Jefferson, NC, by folks who know woodworking.

T h e A r t o f R o u t i n g

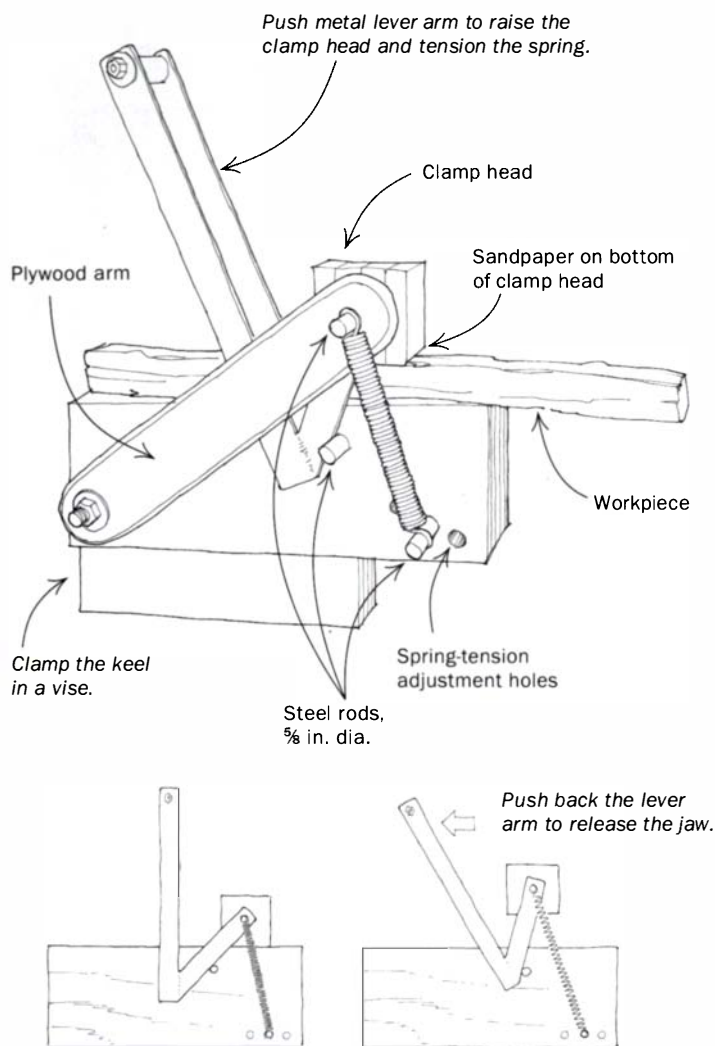
Oldham

www.oldham-usa.com

1-800-828-9000

READER SERVICE NO. 160

Methods of Work (continued)



through the wooden arms, the metal lever arms, the clamp head and the springs. A second shaft through the body of the horse provides a fulcrum point for the lever arms. A third shaft provides an attachment point for the springs and can be moved to increase or decrease the clamping force. Clamping pressure can also be adjusted by using stronger or weaker springs. The clamp head has sandpaper on the business side to enhance the grip. You could also add a strip of sandpaper to the top edge of the body for an even better grip.

All of the wooden parts of the jig were made from $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick Baltic-birch plywood. The lever arms were welded up from 1-in.-wide, $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-thick steel.

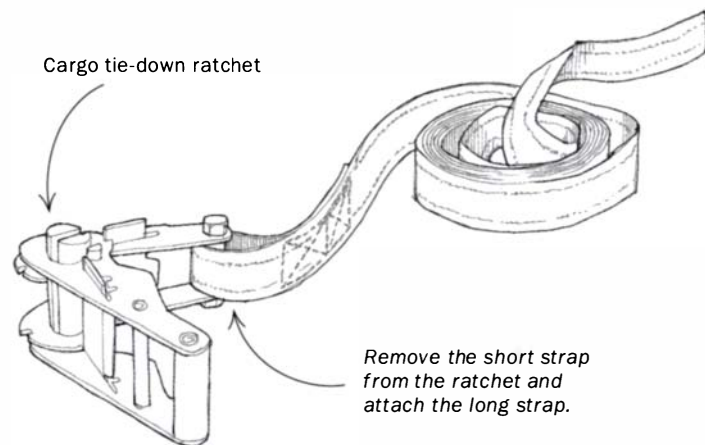
—Louis Mengoli, La Mesa, Calif.

Quick tip: Make your furniture templates from clear Lucite plastic. This allows you to move the pattern around the blank until you find the perfect grain pattern to complement the design.

—Robert McElroy, Grants Pass, Ore.

Tie-down band clamp

For edge-banding round tabletops and clamping odd shapes, I use a modified cargo tie-down as a band clamp. Tie-downs are heavy nylon straps with a ratchet on one end used by truckers to secure



their loads. These tools are commonly available in several sizes at auto-parts stores.

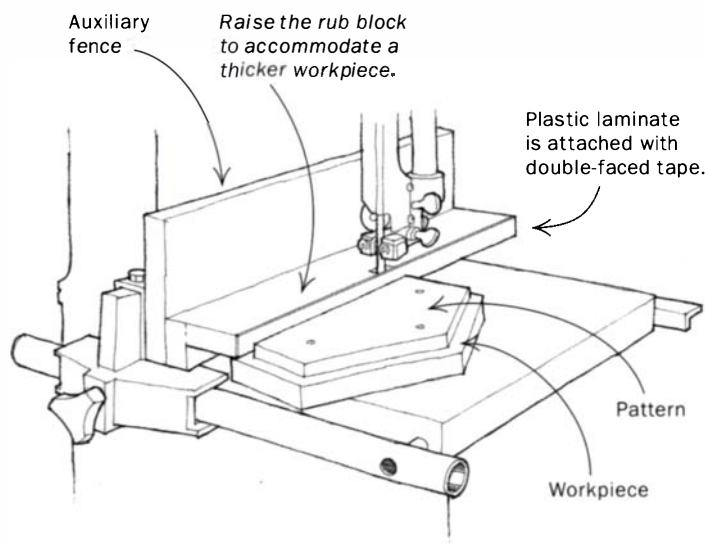
When purchased, the tie-down comes in two parts: the ratchet with a short strap attached and a separate longer strap. To use as a band clamp, remove the short strap from the ratchet and replace it with the long strap.

—Jim Wallace, Cedar Park, Texas

Quick tip: When I connected my new saw to a dust-extraction system, the amount of air leaking through various holes and slots in the saw's base was unacceptable. So I bought a flexible magnetic sheet—the kind used on car doors for advertising—and snipped out the necessary shapes with scissors to seal off the unwanted air leaks. Now the dust collection works much better, and I can easily remove the seals when necessary.

—Ruud Joling, Purmerend, The Netherlands

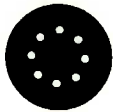
Pattern cutting on the bandsaw



For years I've used my tablesaw for pattern sawing using a technique described in *FWW* #47, p. 54. Recently, however, I became nervous about using the tablesaw technique when I had a workpiece that was only 2 in. on one side. It just didn't feel safe. So I

Supergrit® SANDPAPER

HOOK & LOOP



2" \$16/100 3" \$20/100
4 1/2" or 5" 5 or 8 Hole \$13/50
6" 6, 8 or 16 Hole \$17.50/50

"LAPIKA" MICRON 1/4 SHEETS
40-10 MICRON (400-1500 GRIT)
REG. \$39.95/50 SALE \$12.50/50

BELTS—A.O. RESIN			SHEETS—9" x 11", A.O.		
1 x 30	\$.75	4 x 24	\$1.10	60D, 80D	\$14/50
1 x 42	\$.75	4 x 36	\$1.50	120C, 150C	\$23/100
3 x 21	\$.85	6 x 48	\$3.50	180A, 220A	\$21/100
3 x 24	\$.90	6 x 89	\$6.20		

RED HILL CORP.
P.O. BOX 4234
GETTYSBURG, PA 17325
800-822-4003
www.supergrit.com

READER SERVICE NO. 43

WHITECHAPEL LTD THE WORLD'S FINEST HARDWARE

Free 216 page color catalog: 1-307-739-9478
Web: whitechapel-ltd.com



French armor hinges available in six sizes.

READER SERVICE NO. 123

Table Legs!

95 styles and sizes

Table base kits in
21 styles & sizes

Ready to finish

Free catalog and
pricing at:

www.tablelegs.com

800-843-7405

CLASSIC DESIGNS
by MATTHEW BURAK

BOX 328, ST. JOHNSBURY, VT 05819

READER SERVICE NO. 174

THE SOURCE FOR BANDSAW ACCESSORIES

Iturra Design : New 2002 Catalog

Free Catalog



- Introducing the **Quick Release** by Carter Products
- Our new **Blade Gage** bandsaw blade tension meter.
- **Lenox Pro Master** carbide-tipped and Bimetal blades
- **Bandrollers**, rip and re-saw fences, improved tension springs, tires, table inserts, circle jigs, and much more.
- History and comparison between **Delta** and **JET** bandsaws.

CALL 1-888-722-7078 or 1-904-642-2802

READER SERVICE NO. 86

POWERMATIC

WE HAVE
IT ALL IN
WOODWORKING
SUPPLIES

GENERAL

DELTA

JET

**WoodWorkers
Depot**

3001 RAMADA WAY, GREEN BAY, WI 54304
1-800-891-9003 FAX (920) 336-8683
www.woodworkersdepot.com
PROFESSIONAL QUALITY AT A WAREHOUSE PRICE

READER SERVICE NO. 63

Pink Ivory
Dagame
Brazilian Rosewood
Pear
Plum
Burls
Snakewood
Bubinga
Koa
Satinwood
Cocobolo
Padauk
Rosewood
Bloodwood
Ziricote
Purpleheart
C. Ebony
Pau Rosa
Camphor

"It's a matter of
pride for both of us"

Quality Exotic Wood

»TURNERS«
Thick Planks for Bowls/Squares

»CABINET MAKERS«
Individually Selected Lumber
for
Furniture / Boxes / Inlays

Over 70 Species
www.bereahardwoods.com

BereaHardWoodsCo.
6367 Eastland Rd. • Brook Park, OH 44142
P 440-234-7949 F 440-234-7958

Pernambuco
Mac. Ebony
E.I. Rosewood
Bocote
Curly Maple
Quilted Maple
African Ebony
Zebrano
Lacewood
Lignum Vitae
Osage
Tulipwood
Blackwood
Mahogany
Jelutong
Holly
Wenge
Goncalo Alves
Many More...
"It's a matter of
pride for both of us"

READER SERVICE NO. 15

HARTVILLE TOOL

Hard-to-Find-Tools!



Call To Order:
10905

Log on @
www.hartvilletool.com

1-800-345-2396

FREE
Catalog!

Code # FW 302

READER SERVICE NO. 22

Methods of Work (continued)

modified the pattern-cutting fixture for use on my bandsaw. The fixture is quite simple to construct (see the drawing on p. 20).

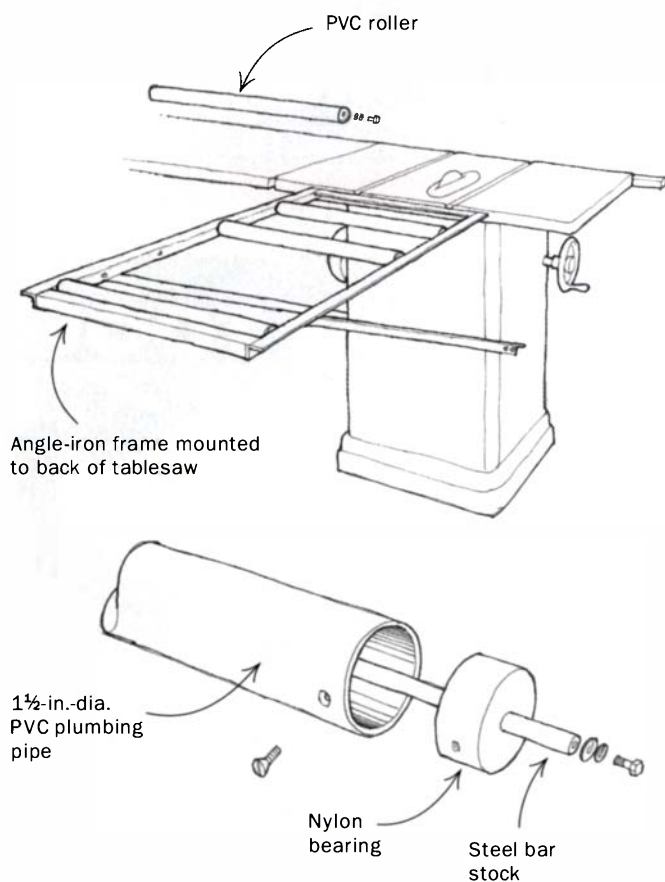
It is a good idea to construct the fixture so that the inside cutting edge of the blade is a standard distance from the outer edge of the fixture— $\frac{1}{2}$ in. in my case. This allows you to cut the hardboard pattern pieces $\frac{1}{2}$ in. smaller than the desired final dimensions. One important part of the fixture is a strip of plastic laminate held in place with double-faced tape. This provides a continuous surface against which the pattern can be run, avoiding any snags at the cutout around the sawblade.

—Barnett C. Howard, Sisters, Ore.

Quick tip: Use flexible sewer hose designed for recreational vehicles for your 3-in. dust-collection pipes. The hose is fitted with twist locks for easy connection and can be purchased quite reasonably at RV supply stores.

—Earvin Ruddick, Westminster, Md.

Tablesaw extension with PVC rollers



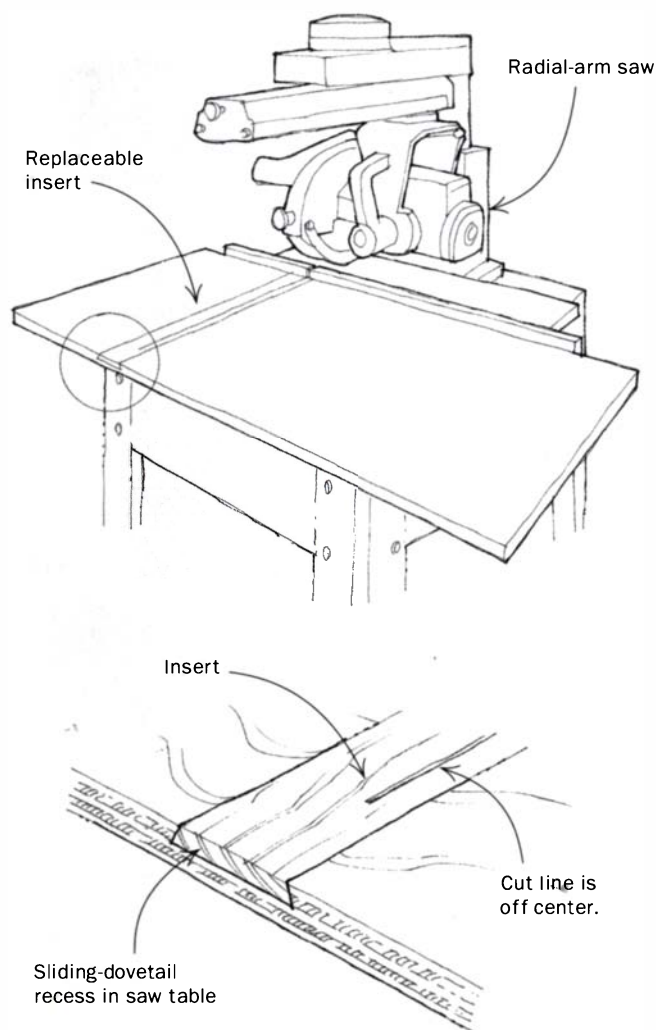
In a one-man shop, ripping sheet goods and long lumber is difficult. I decided to solve this problem by building a roller extension on the back of my tablesaw. When I discovered that the commercially available rollers cost \$26 each, I went shopping. For a few bucks I bought a 10-ft. length of $1\frac{1}{2}$ -in.-dia. PVC plumbing pipe, a short length of nylon bar stock, several lengths of $\frac{1}{2}$ -in.-dia. steel bar stock and some angle iron.

I made up four rollers by cutting lengths of the PVC and fitting

each end of the pipe with bearings made from the nylon bar stock. I made axles from the $\frac{1}{2}$ -in.-dia. steel bar stock and drilled and tapped holes in each end to attach the axles to the frame. I then made a cantilevered framework with angle iron and bolted the framework to the back of the saw as shown, so that the rollers are level with the top of the tablesaw. This extension has made the handling of large stock much easier, quicker and safer.

—Don Gilliem, Milford, Mich.

Replaceable insert for radial-arm saw



After a time the cut line on a radial-arm saw's table gets too worn to provide an accurate guide and a splinter-free backup for the cut. Yes, I could replace the front part of the table with a fresh piece of plywood, but this is not an economical solution.

So I devised this dovetail table insert that could be replaced as frequently as needed with little effort. The insert installs into a sliding dovetail where it requires no permanent attachment, and it can't lift out during the cut. I routed the insert's channel off center to the cut line of the blade so that a single insert can be swapped end for end and thus serve double duty. I used a router and a dovetail bit to rout the channel into the table and to bevel the edges of the insert.

—Millard B. Niver, Navarre, Ohio

NEW from Senco



Senco's **NEWEST** Micro Pinner
Model FinishPro 10
\$129.99

PORTER-CABLE



Use cordless OR with air compressor!
NEW 12V
Cordless Brad Nailer
Model BN200V12
\$249.99

Lowest Prices Guaranteed!
CALL 1-800-922-SAWS

For 24-Hour Service:
ORDER ONLINE at:
www.ToolFactoryOutlet.com
Tool Factory OUTLET
We Carry **ALL** Major Brands including:

• Porter-Cable	• Delta	• Makita	• Fein
• Bosch	• Milwaukee	• Hitachi	• Bessey
• DeWalt	• Metabo	• Jet	• Amana
• Senco	• Powermatic	• Panasonic	• CMT

Same-Day Shipping on most items • Next-Day delivery available Call our **FREE** Tech. Line for tool information and recommendations.

ToolFactoryOutlet.com

READER SERVICE NO. 134

Carve Wood, Engrave Metal with the same pneumatic power handpiece.

Request **FREE** information... **System 3**

1-800-835-3519

Source #121005



900 Overlander
Emporia, KS 66801
Fax: 620-343-9640
GRS@GrsTools.com



The **NEW**
REPLACEABLE and **REVERSIBLE**
Microplane® Rasp.

"Microplanes® shave the wood instead of tearing and gouging."
- Scott Phillips

For more info call: **1-800-555-2767**

Microplane
A Product of Grace Manufacturing

www.microplane.com
info@microplane.com

READER SERVICE NO. 6

Attention: Makers of solid panel cabinet doors



Revolutionary NEW Product

The inexpensive solution to your age-old problem

- Centers solid panels
- Helps eliminate cracking glue joints
- Stops panel 'rattle'
- Compresses as panels expand

SPACEBALLS will cut out most major call-backs on solid or flat panel doors.

0.26" & 3/16" diameter - fit standard stile and rail cutters. 8 to 10 recommended per door.

Call us today for your order!

1-800-826-8912
blackbridgeonline.com

READER SERVICE NO. 197

GENERAL

PRECISION
WOODWORKING
TOOLS



**EXCEPTIONAL
PRICING
SERVICE &
VALUE**
Made In Canada

GENERAL MACHINERY

The only High Quality, Heavy Duty Line of Woodworking Equipment
Tablesaws, Jointers, Mortisers, Lathes, Drill Presses and accessories including Modulus® Scoring Saw Attachment



www.woodworktools.com
ASHMAN TECHNICAL LTD.

351 Nash Rd, N. Hamilton, Ontario, CANADA L8H 7P4
Phone 905-560-2400 • FAX: 905-560-2404

1-800-668-5721

READER SERVICE NO. 30

HAMMER

A company of the **FELDER GROUP**

Always one step ahead!

The new brand of Austrian woodworking machines with an unmistakable design, unique stability, outstanding accuracy and exceptional value for your money.

C3-31 Comfort
your complete workshop

- ✓ Inward tilting planer tables
- ✓ Self setting planer knives
- ✓ 3 motors
- ✓ 12" saw with 4" cut
- ✓ Scoring available
- ✓ Professional sliding table 78" with outrigger table
- ✓ Massive cast iron tables and rock solid construction

Call now for free
VIDEO + information
1-800-700 0071



www.hammerusa.com

COMBINATION MACHINES • SHAPERS • JOINTERS • PLANERS • SLIDING TABLE SAWS

HAMMER USA West • 1851 Enterprise Blvd.
West Sacramento, CA 95691

HAMMER USA East • 2 Mc Cullough Drive,
New Castle, DE 19720

Call 916-375-3190 • Fax 916-375-3194

READER SERVICE NO. 204

**Australian
School
of Fine
Furniture**

AUSTRALIA'S MOST
COMPREHENSIVE 2 YEAR
DIPLOMA COURSE
IN DESIGNING AND
MAKING FINE FURNITURE
OFFERED IN THE FORESTED
ISLAND STATE OF
TASMANIA.
NEXT INTAKE
JANUARY 2003.

FULLY ACCREDITED
INCLUDING PROFESSIONAL
TRAINING IN DESIGN,
MAKING AND BUSINESS
MANAGEMENT.
FOR INFORMATION:
EMAIL:
INFO@ASF.COM.AU
WEB: WWW.ASF.COM.AU
PH: +61-3-6331 0288



READER SERVICE NO. 175

Notes & Comment

Woodworking at Colonial Williamsburg

Tables were the theme of the fourth annual conference on Working Wood in the 18th Century. Jointly sponsored by *Fine Woodworking* and Colonial Williamsburg, the two consecutive programs drew more than 450 woodworkers, many of whom

are making this a must-see event in their annual calendars.

Three different styles of tables were constructed using only methods available over 200 years ago. In 18th-century dress, Mack Headley and David Salisbury, from the cabinetmaking shop in Colonial Williamsburg, worked on a drop-leaf table with Queen Anne legs. Will Neptune spent so long creating the perfect mortise and tenon that the rest of the table remained more of a

concept, but the audience didn't seem to mind. Philip C. Lowe got the loudest applause when he worked on a lathe driven by a human-powered 80-in. wheel (see the photo at right). Lowe admitted to me beforehand that he was terrified of the contraption, but afterward he said that it was easier to use than he expected because the tool rest and the workpiece vibrated in unison.

Those interested in attending next year's conference can send an e-mail to tkinhead@cwf.org or call (757) 220-7182.

—Mark Schofield, assistant editor



A critical eye. Mack Headley (left), the master cabinetmaker at Colonial Williamsburg, examines a tilt-top tea table being made by Phil Lowe.



Human power. A member of the audience supplied the power to the lathe (above) while Phil Lowe turned the pedestal of a tea table.



Test-fit. Will Neptune (left) demonstrates how to make and assemble a mortise-and-tenon joint.

Wood webs

www.ebay.com

This online auction site has expanded since its early days, when the only things for sale seemed to be Beanie Babies. Of interest to woodworkers is the fact that an average of 20,000 tools are for sale everyday. Seventy percent of these tools are either new or refurbished, representing the fact that many retailers are using the site to offload last year's merchandise or products that have been returned.

Navigating the site is not obvious: Typing in woodworking tools in the

search box produced only 97 items. On the home page under categories, click on tools. This will list air, hand and power tools, each group further broken down into subcategories, such as grinders, nail guns and routers, among others. The seller pays the commission, and unless specified, the buyer pays the shipping.

www.womeninwoodworking.com

The forum on this web site is an interesting comparison with the Knots discussion at *Fine Woodworking* online.

Whereas the latter sometimes degenerates into a Wild West saloon brawl, the former feels more like dropping in on an Edwardian drawing-room conversation: Everyone is frightfully polite. However, the discussions generally focus more on the beginner and intermediate levels.

The best part of the site is its very extensive list of links to other woodworking-related web sites, usefully arranged in 20 themes from adhesives to woodworkers' personal web sites.

—M.S.



Forrest Saw Blades

America's
Best Since 1946!

"You Can Count On Us For Quality, Performance, and Dependability!"



Jim Forrest, President

"When we established Forrest Manufacturing over 55 years ago, we committed our company to providing the very best products and services possible.

"Since then, demanding craftsmen have come to rely on us for the finest quality blades and dados. They also count on us for the best in-factory sharpening available anywhere.

"Forrest saw blades eliminate or reduce splintering, scratching, and tearouts.

We make them of high corrosion-resistant C-4 carbide to provide the longest possible life between sharpenings. We also hand-straighten them for perfect flatness and an astonishing +/- .001" runout that gives you peak performance. And Forrest blades feature exceptional perimeter concentricity and super fine tooth grind to ensure the highest quality edges.

"Our exclusive guarantee is another reason to have complete confidence in the products we offer! **Purchase any Forrest blade or dado and use it for up to 30 days. If you are not completely satisfied for any reason, return it for a full refund.** There's never any risk to you. You have my word on it!"

Jim Forrest

Woodworker II

ALL PURPOSE - table saws and portable circular saws.

		Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	15% Off Second Blade
12" x 40T x 1"		\$120	\$116	\$110
10" x 40T	(1/8" or 3/32" K)	\$110	\$107	\$101
10" x 30T	(1/8" or 3/32" K)	\$90	\$89	\$84
8 1/4" x 40T	(3/32" K)*	\$90	\$89	\$84
8" x 40T	(3/32" K)	\$90	\$89	\$84
7 1/4" x 30T	(3/32" K)	\$80	\$62	\$59
5 3/8" x 40T x 10mm	(5/64" K)**	\$80	\$80	\$76

Also available: 14" x 40T x 1" • 14" x 30T x 1" • 12" x 30T x 1" • 9" x 40T • 9" x 30T • 8" x 30T (3/32" K) • 6" x 40T (3/32" K). Call for prices.

The 10" x 40T earned the Editor's Choice for the best performance regardless of price. *American Woodworker* April 1998, pp 68-69.

*For Sears & Makita **For DeWalt Cordless Portables

New! Customized Woodworker II

For the advanced table saw operator. Ideal for joinery and special uses!

		Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	15% Off Second Blade
10" x 40T (1/8" K)	#1 grind for square cut box joints.	\$120	\$117	\$111
10" x 40T (1/8" K)	#6 grind for near flat bottom, easy feed.	\$120	\$117	\$111
10" x 40T (1/8" K)	Dovetail joint grind. Specify angle & left or right points. See Fine WW12/01.	\$120	\$117	\$111
10" x 40T (5/64" K)	Ultra thin kerf for precision work. Use stiffener plate.	\$120	\$125	\$118
10" x 20T (1/8" K)	Fast feed rip for thick hardwood without burning, but finish is not smooth like WW11.	\$94	\$85	\$80

Dado-King

You get flat-bottomed grooves and no splintering—even when crosscutting oak plys and melamine. This award-winning set comes with six 4-tooth chippers (including 3/32" chipper), two 24-tooth outside blades plus shims. Cuts 1/8" to 29/32" grooves.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Set	15% Off Second Set
6" set	\$260	\$242	\$229
8" set	\$280	\$260	\$245
10" set	\$340	\$314	\$297
12" set	\$440	\$404	\$382

FREE \$21 value!
10" Blade Runner carrying case. Protects and holds up to 10 blades. Ships with 6", 8", or 10" Dado sets. Included free with your order!

Duraline HI A/T

Cuts melamine perfectly. 220mm & 300mm available. Our best plywood blade.

		Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	15% Off Second Blade
10" x 80T	(1/8" or 3/32" K)	\$160	\$143	\$135
12" x 80T x 1"	(1/8" K)	\$184	\$163	\$154

14" x 100T x 1" • 14" x 80T x 1" • 16" x 100T x 1" • 8" • 7 1/4" and others. Call for prices.

Chop Master

Specially designed for sliding compound miter, miter-chop, and radial saws.

		Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	15% Off Second Blade
7 1/2" x 60T x 5/8"	Makita Cordless Slide	\$105	\$95	\$89
8 1/2" x 60T x 5/8"	Hitachi, DeWalt, Ryobi, Freud TR125	\$110	\$107	\$101
10" x 80T x 5/8"	Delta, Bosch, Hitachi, Makita, Ryobi, AEG & all	\$120	\$125	\$118
12" x 80T x 1"	Delta, Hitachi, Makita, B&D, Sears & all	\$140	\$134	\$127
15" x 100T x 1"	Makita, Ryobi	\$190	\$179	\$169

Also available: 8 1/4" x 60T • 6 1/2" x 40T • 9" x 80T • 14" x 100T. Call for prices.

Woodworker I

Designed for radial arm or tablesaws—fine crosscut.

		Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	15% Off Second Blade
7 1/4", 8", 8 1/4" x 60T		\$100	\$98	\$93
10" x 60T		\$120	\$116	\$110
12" x 60T		\$130	\$125	\$118

Also available: 9" x 60T • 14" x 60T. Call for prices.

All prices in U.S. funds

Two Easy Ways to Order

Call toll-free

1-800-733-7111

(In NJ, 973-473-5236)

Fax 973-471-3333

Se habla español

Western Canada: Call Sharp Tech, Inc.

877-228-0908 • Fax 403-225-3767

Other Canadian Sales: Call CMR - Ron Collier

800-229-4814 • Fax 517-684-0402

Visit our internet store

stores.yahoo.com/forrestman



DON'T SEE WHAT YOU NEED?
Call us for other blades and dampener discs!

\$15 OFF* OUR EXPERT BLADE SHARPENING!

Don't take a chance with micro-chipped edges on your expensive wood! Our in-factory sharpening preserves the life and performance of all types of carbide blades. In fact, Forrest Manufacturing represents the industry standard for fine quality sharpening. We process most orders in 3 to 5 days, and we'll give you \$15 IN DISCOUNT COUPONS* with your next order for any blade or dado you own! (Please include return UPS of \$7 + \$1 for each additional blade.)

FORREST

Forrest Manufacturing Company
457 River Road
Clifton, NJ 07014

© 2002 Forrest Manufacturing Company, Inc.

* 3 coupons at \$5 each, use 1 coupon per blade.

FREE SHIPPING—
All Orders Over \$275
Other orders, please add:
Saw blade - \$7 • Dado -
\$9 • Stiffener - \$3

Master carver uses tools made from motorcycle parts



In Tibet there is a long tradition of Buddhism and wood carving going hand in hand. However, I didn't expect to witness the tradition in the unlikely setting of a barn in upstate New York, where Tina Westbrook commissioned a Tibetan master carver named Dhola to build a Buddhist altar for her home.

Dhola began to learn carving at the age of 15 and later studied the craft in India at a school run by the Tibetan government-in-exile. After completing a six-year course to become master carver, he spent two years making items for a monastery in India before coming to the United States.

Many of Dhola's carving tools are homemade with steel recovered from old motorcycle springs and umbrella ribs. For her altar, Westbrook provided Dhola some cherry that her father had cut 50 years earlier. The wood was much harder than most woods Dhola had worked with, because in India and Tibet the wood is traditionally soaked in water prior to carving. Despite this, Dhola still managed to do intricate carving (see the photo above).

—M.S.

Handmade hand tools. Tibetan master carver Dhola made many of his chisels from scratch using old motorcycle springs and umbrella parts. Much of the frame-and-panel construction was cut using a bowsaw. The doors are hinged with pins engaging the rails.



Book reviews



The Gubbio Studiolo and its Conservation by Olga Raggio and Antoine Wilmering (two volumes). Yale University Press; 2000. \$125 hardcover; 484 pp.

There is a little-known masterpiece of European woodworking in the United States. It is the Gubbio Studiolo in the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City. The *studiolo* was once installed in the Ducal Palace in Gubbio in central Italy. It is a tour de force of Italian Renaissance intarsia. The wall panels are designed with illusionary “fool-the-eye” designs depicting open cupboards and the objects within.

The museum has recently published a two-volume set on the history, aesthetics and craft involved in the design, building and restoration of the room. The first volume puts the room into its historic context. There is a fine discussion of the architecture of the palace and the development of perspective drawing.

It is the second volume that will probably be of greater interest to woodworkers. The author, Antoine Wilmering, one of the museum's conservation staff, was responsible for overseeing the painstaking restoration of the studiolo. I particularly appreciate his illumination of how the work was accomplished. It is stunning to realize that these masterpieces were executed with relatively simple tools and the limited woods available in central Italy.

This book will be a treasured part

SOLVE THE MANY PROBLEMS OF OVERSPRAY



MiniPro Plus Model 1235

Turbinaire HVLP Sprayer
Reduce Overspray By Up To 90%
No Compressor Required
Easy To Use And Maintain
Bleeder or Non-Bleeder Gun
Gun Accessory Kit Promo *

Unique Variable Speed Turbine

Offers versatility to adjust air output based on material being sprayed. Reduce air for light bodied coatings and increase air for heavy bodied coatings.



As used by
Scott Phillips of
"The American
Woodshop"
on public
television.



Compressor HVLP Guns

Reduce Overspray By Up To 90%
Reduces Air Pressure 10:1
Use With Any Compressor
Delivering 10-15 CFM @ 60-90 PSI
Complete Systems With Gun,
Hoses & Paint Tanks Up To 5 Gal



TURBINAIRE
HVLP Spray Equipment Since 1982

* Call today
1-800-866-HVLP (4857)
Distributor Inquiries welcome

www.turbinaire.com • sales@turbinaire.com
See you at a woodworking show near you.

READER SERVICE NO. 41

LeNeave Machinery & Supply Co., Inc.

305 W. Morehead St., Charlotte, NC 28202
Quality Woodworking Equipment Since 1957
800-442-2302 704-376-7421 Fax: 333-1017

15-in. Planer
3HP \$889⁰⁰

20-in. Planer
5HP \$1395⁰⁰



10-in. Cabinet saw
\$995⁰⁰

Jet
Powermatic
Delta
NORTH STATE
Porter Cable
Hitachi
Williams & Hussey
Woodmaster
Freeborn
Amana
Whitesides
Raised Panel Door
Machines

Ritter
Wide Belt Sanders
Moulders, Planers
Table Saws, Jointers
Dust Collectors
Shapers, Band Saws
Mortisers, Tenoner's
Radial Arms,
Stock Feeders, Router
Bits
Moulding Heads
Shaper Cutters
Saw Blades



**We Will Not
Be Under Sold!**

We can Furnish Any Woodworking Machinery & Supplies needed!

READER SERVICE NO. 75

Gemini Carving Duplicator

**"The Professional's
Woodworking Secret"**

Videotape demo
available
Call for details



**Fast
Rugged
Accurate**

Allred & Associates, Inc
11 Teasel Lane - Skaneateles NY 13152
+1 315 252-2559 fax: 252-0502

Visit our extensive website:
www.wood-carver.com

READER SERVICE NO. 5

Wood Finishing Education and Seminars

Dakota County Technical College's unique nine-month Wood Finishing program offers hands-on training for:

- Restoration • Production finishing
- Furniture service technician training

Smithsonian Museum Week-long Woodfinishing Workshops at DCTC

- May 28-June 1: Techniques & Preservation of Historical Coatings
- July 8-12: Finishing New Wood
- July 15-19: Advanced Finishing Techniques
- July 22-26: Refinishing, Refurbishing & Conservation of Furniture
- Aug 5-9: Preservation of Polychrome Furniture

Call toll-free 1-877-YES-DCTC for details or visit **www.woodfinishing.org**



Twin Cities • Minnesota

EOE

READER SERVICE NO. 58



**National
Wood Finishing
Conference
Friday, May 17
and Saturday,
May 18**

TENRYU PRO SERIES

**"The cuts were so quiet and
effortless it felt like I forgot
to raise the blade"**

Hal Taylor, Museum Quality Works of Art, Hartwood, VA

Hal's comment is typical of the many we receive from craftsmen who have tried our Pro Series blades.

Each blade features:

- Expertly-tensioned, fully-hardened tool steel plates for true run
- Fine grit honing of carbide edge for clean, smooth, and easy cuts
- Resin bond-filled expansion slots for extremely quiet cuts

- High-grade, wear-resistant carbide tips for long life

Tenryu Pro Series blades are also available for cutting plastic and non-ferrous metals. So save your ears and make life easier with Tenryu blades. Ask for them at your favorite dealer or call 800-951-SAWS.

TENRYU AMERICA, INC.
www.tenryu.com



FOR YOUR SAFETY:
Follow machine and
manual safety
instructions.

Making quality saw blades since 1910

TENRYU

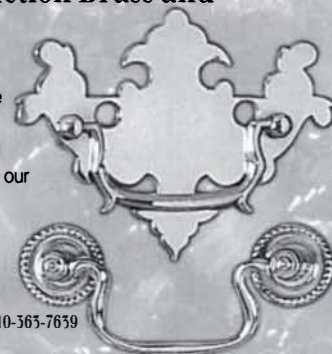
READER SERVICE NO. 94

Finest Quality Reproduction Brass and Iron Hardware

Since 1932, BALL AND BALL has been manufacturing the finest quality antique reproduction furniture hardware, builders hardware, lighting fixtures, and fireplace accessories available. Call for our 108-page catalog, available for \$7.00 (catalog cost refunded on first order).



Ball and Ball
465 W. Lincoln Highway
Exton, PA 19341
Phone: 610-363-7330 • Fax: 610-363-7639
Orders: 1-800-257-3711
Visit our website - **www.ballandball-us.com**



READER SERVICE NO. 89

Jefferson desk goes to Smithsonian Institution

Lon Schleining's first replica of Thomas Jefferson's laptop writing desk was originally featured in our October 2000 issue (*FWW* #144, pp. 64-71) and later in his book *Treasure Chests* (The Taunton Press, 2001).

Schleining, a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*, also showed the desk to Smithsonian Institution Secretary Lawrence Small, who said the original is his favorite object among all of those in the Smithsonian's massive collection. The original, which is in the Smithsonian's National Museum of American History, was used by Jefferson when he wrote the Declaration of Independence.

Small liked Schleining's replica so much that he asked the woodworker to make a copy that he could show to visitors in his Washington, D.C., office. Schleining agreed, and The Taunton Press financed the venture and was the official donor of the desk when Schleining presented it to Small on Jan. 15 in the Smithsonian's famous Castle headquarters on the National Mall.

—Timothy D. Schreiner, publisher



In good hands. Lawrence Small (left), on behalf of the Smithsonian Institution, accepts a copy of Jefferson's laptop desk made by Lon Schleining (center) and presented by Tim Schreiner (right).

Maker of ancient and modern wins award

The Society of American Period Furniture Makers presented Robert Whitley from Solebury, Pa., with its annual Cartouche Award for outstanding achievement in the craft of period furniture making. Whitley, like previous winners, has an awe-inspiring portfolio of period-furniture reproductions.

What makes him different from previous winners is that he also designs and makes pieces with very contemporary styling. Whitley attributed this unusual combination to the fact that his father was an antique collector and restorer and introduced his son to 18th-century furniture at a tender age. Whitley was introduced to modern designs at art school and has managed to work in both styles without combining them throughout his career.

—M.S.

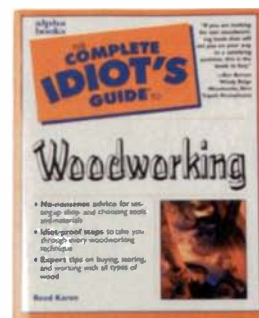


Winning work. The Judge Stacey Potts Highboy in the permanent collection of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts was reproduced by Robert Whitley (left) for a descendant of the original owner.

Book reviews (continued)

of the library of anyone who is interested in marquetry and the history of woodwork.

—Silas Kopf, a woodworker in Northampton, Mass., who specializes in marquetry



The Complete Idiot's Guide to Woodworking by Reed Karen. Alpha Books, Indianapolis, Ind.; 2000. \$16.95 softcover; 364 pp.

If someone you know is just getting into woodworking, this book certainly will answer a lot of their questions. There are explanations of the rather convoluted way hardwoods are generally sold and advice on avoiding common pitfalls, such as "tool lust"—thinking you need more tools than you really do.

Reed Karen, who studied under Tage Frid and now teaches at the Parsons School of Design in New York City, is on very solid ground here with such words of wisdom as, "Only when the technical becomes automatic can you explore the artistic side of a craft." And it's this technical side he covers with amazing completeness in just 363 pages.

It's too bad for someone with Karen's credentials that this book is saddled with such an insulting title, but once you get beyond that, you find a book that's informative, substantive and at times very entertaining. As a book for someone who's looking to get a jump-start on woodworking, it's perfect.

—Lon Schleining, contributing editor



**SUMMER
WORKSHOP with TOSHIO ODATE**
Japanese Tools
JULY 13 & 14, 2002

Worcester 
Center for Crafts

25 Sagamore Rd • Worcester, MA 01605

508-753-8183 ♦ fax: 508-797-5626

wcc@worcestercraftcenter.org • www.worcestercraftcenter.org

SCHOOL FOR PROFESSIONAL CRAFTS

2 year Associate Degree or non-degree programs available

Applications for Artists-in-Residence & SPC program currently being accepted. Call today!

READER SERVICE NO. 62

***You Did It
Yourself***

*Using Raised Panel Doors,
Dovetail Drawer Boxes or
Complete Cabinet Kits
from*

Scherr's
Cabinet and Doors, Inc.

531 S Highway 2 East • Minot, ND 58701
Ph. (701) 839-3384 • Fax (701) 852-6090
email: doormaker@minot.com

www.scherrs.com

READER SERVICE NO. 8

**NORTHWEST
TIMBER**

**STEP UP TO THE FINEST
FIGURED MAPLE,
AND WESTERN WALNUT
ON THE PLANET**



*Furniture by Michael Elkan

*photo: Eric Griswold

- **FIGURED MAPLE**, quilted, curly, spalted, burlled, birdseye and figured flooring
- **WESTERN WALNUT**, curly, marbled, crotch, burlled and vertical grained
- **CURLY CHERRY**
- **PORT ORFORD WHITE CEDAR VG** (OLD GROWTH SALVAGED LOGS)
- **MYRTLEWOOD**, musical grade, lumber and slabs

NORTHWEST TIMBER

(541) 327-1000 • WWW.NWTIMBER.COM

READER SERVICE NO. 33

Vacuum Laminating Technology Inc.

1-800-403-2344

Our Improved Vacuum Presses
are the answer to all
pressing needs.

- Regulated industrial vacuum pumps
- Vacuum generators & Vacuum Clamps
- Heavy duty Vacuum Bags in Urethane or Vinyl
- TopPress, the easy to use top loading press



**We guarantee the best
quality and the lowest
prices. Call now for our
new catalog.**

P.O. Box 2164 • Fort Bragg, CA 95437
Tel 707-961-4142 • Fax 707-961-4143
email: vlt@mcn.org
www.vacuum-press.com

READER SERVICE NO. 88

**#1 Rated Drum Sander
by Independent Experts!**



**FREE
30-Day
Trial!**

**5-Year
Warranty**

**Prouder Than
Ever to be
MADE IN AMERICA!**

***Wide Belt Performance
...at About 1/3 the Cost!***

Call today for a FREE report on why Woodmaster's Drum Sander was voted "tops" by *Fine Woodworking Magazine* vs. Performax®, Grizzly®, etc. See how a Woodmaster can cut your sanding time by up to 90%!

Now, our line of 26" and 38" drum sanders includes a new 50" model. These commercial-duty sanders fill the niche between slow hand methods and expensive wide-belt sanders...at about one third the cost. And there's no sacrifice in quality.

Call today and we'll give you the names of Woodmaster owners near you. This way, you can find out, first hand, how a Woodmaster might be just the machine you've been looking for.

Call Today for Free Facts

1-800-821-6651 ext. DS85

Woodmaster Tools, Inc.
1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept. DS85, Kansas City, MO 64120

READER SERVICE NO. 180

A new line of traditional woodworkers

Going their own way in wood-working. Fritz Zeller, Jason Rivers and Chris Ray (left to right) are the first three students to graduate from The Furniture Institute of Massachusetts.



Philip C. Lowe

The Furniture Institute of Massachusetts graduated its first three students, after an intensive two-year study under the exacting eye of Philip C. Lowe. As one would expect from a former instructor at North Bennet Street School, with an extensive portfolio of 18th-century reproduction furniture to his credit, Lowe's school has a pronounced period style. The students, however, are free to interpret and meld different traditions, as this piece by Fritz Zeller (right) demonstrates.

For more information about the school, call (978) 922-0615 or send an e-mail to furnitur@shore.net

—M.S.



Federal-style bow-front with French feet. Zeller made this piece of cherry with veneered satinwood and mahogany crossbanded drawer fronts. The cock beads are maple.

Fritz Zeller



THE PROFESSIONAL PORTABLE WORKSTATION

Mighty 8-foot cutting capacity

Work Support & Flip Stop adjust to suit material & saw height

Slide saw where you need it

Contractor-tough: weighs just 30 lbs. - beam supports 400 lbs.!

Rugged legs lock in place - or fold away

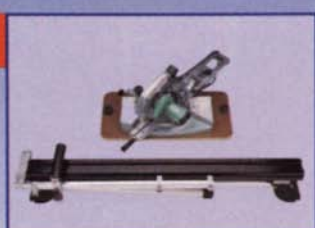
ROCK STEADY!



ACCURATE!



PORTABLE!



Patent # 5,836,365 & 5,592,981

TracMaster is proudly made by TracRac Inc. 994 Jefferson Street Fall River MA 02721 www.tracrac.com 800-501-1587

The International Woodworking Machinery & Furniture Supply Fair-USA®



New Technology • New Innovations • New Ideas



Your Atlanta Advantage

A World of Opportunity In One Place

**See Fine
Woodworking
in Booth BC405**

August 22-25, 2002

**Georgia World Congress Center
Atlanta, Georgia USA**

Come to IWF and learn how your operation can run more efficiently, produce better products, control costs, protect margins and increase profits. See live demonstrations of equipment and methods that can help you compete in today's market and make a difference to your bottom line.

IWF brings you face-to-face with the suppliers, manufacturers and experts that can show you what the world has to offer in new technology, products and services as they are introduced to the marketplace.



**Preview IWF
and find sources
for thousands of**

products and services online at

www.iwf2002.com

with the new IWF Connection.

Register Online at www.iwf2002.com

For more information: e-mail info@iwfatlanta.com,
fax a request to 770-246-0620, call 770-246-0608
or write to IWF 2002, 6525 The Corners Parkway,
Suite 115, Norcross, GA 30092 USA

The International Woodworking Machinery & Furniture Supply Fair-USA® is owned and sponsored by: American Furniture Manufacturers Association, Wood Machinery Manufacturers of America and Woodworking Machinery Industry Association.

Tools & Materials

New cordless brad nailer from Porter-Cable features built-in compressor



Minicompressor maximizes convenience. Equipped with a rechargeable battery that powers a small, built-in compressor, this brad nailer is truly portable. But it's not for 98-lb. weaklings.

Porter-Cable recently introduced the first cordless nailer that includes a built-in compressor. The model BN200V12 is capable of delivering a punch strong enough to drive 2-in.-long, 18-gauge brads into solid hardwood. And the nailer works just as well as its compressor-dependent sibling.

The cordless brad nailer has two pressure settings: high and normal. When set on high, the air pressure increases, allowing long brads to be driven into hardwood. The normal setting conserves air and extends the battery charge, yet the tool still does an adequate job of driving brads into most materials.

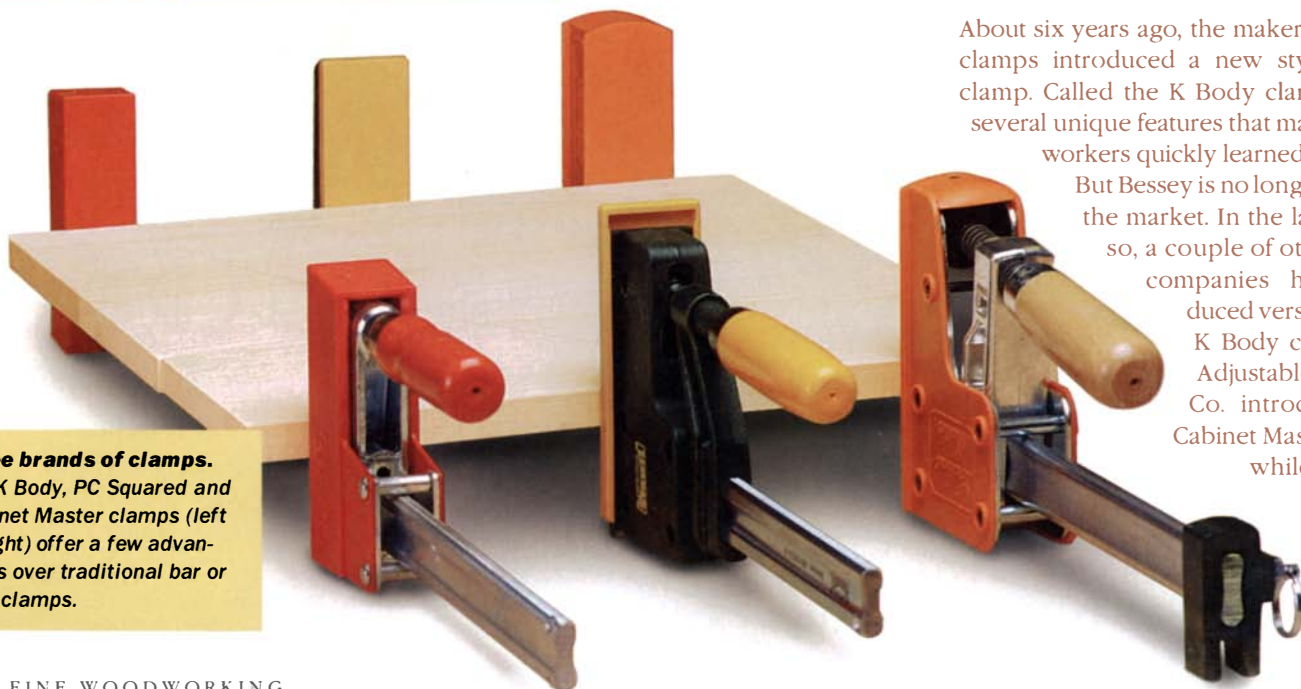
I didn't count how many brads I drove on a single battery charge, but it seemed adequate for a cordless tool. Of course, the number is going to vary depending on the material and fastener length.

At the high setting, the compressor runs briefly after the tool drives a brad. On the regular setting, it won't run until two or three brads have been driven.

At first, it seemed strange to have a compressor running in my hands. I felt some vibration, but it wasn't uncomfortable. And I found the noise level acceptable.

A quick-release nosepiece helps clear jams in no time. And a removable rubber

Shop Test Parallel bar clamps



Three brands of clamps. The K Body, PC Squared and Cabinet Master clamps (left to right) offer a few advantages over traditional bar or pipe clamps.

About six years ago, the maker of Bessey clamps introduced a new style of bar clamp. Called the K Body clamp, it had several unique features that many woodworkers quickly learned to like.

But Bessey is no longer alone in the market. In the last year or so, a couple of other clamp companies have produced versions of the K Body clamp. The Adjustable Clamp Co. introduced the Cabinet Master clamp, while Gross

cushion on the nose protects finished surfaces. Also, an adjustable exhaust port makes it easy to keep the exhaust blast out of your face.

Under the trigger, an adjustment knob allows you to control how deep a brad gets set below the wood surface. I only wish the knob had a little indicator arrow to remind me which way to turn it when I want to increase or decrease the depth.

As I see it, the BN200V12 has just one major drawback. It's heavy, weighing in at nearly 8 lbs. Indeed, while nailing an 8-ft. length of molding at eyeball height, I had to stop briefly a couple of times to give my wrist and forearm a rest. Even when used at bench height, the weight was still an issue for me.

Overall, though, this is a nailer I'd consider for job-site installations. It saves the hassle of hauling a compressor around. It's also useful for quick little finishing touches, when hauling out hoses would take longer than zapping a couple of nails into place. But for everyday nail pounding, I'll stick with the lighter, more compact pneumatic brad nailers.

The BN200V12 sells for around \$289. For more information, contact Porter-Cable at (800) 368-1487.

—Roland Johnson

Old stumps are a new source for Brazilian rosewood

For nearly a decade, the harvesting of Brazilian rosewood (*Dalbergia nigra*) has been banned under the Convention on the International Trade of Endangered Species (CITES). As a result of the convention, only Brazilian rosewood certified to have been felled before 1992 can be traded.

In recent years, this has increasingly confined supplies to preexisting stocks of guitar sets and veneers.

The Berea Hardwoods Co. in Ohio has begun importing "recovered" rosewood. This wood is certified to have been obtained from the stumps of rosewood trees felled prior to 1992. Company president James Heusinger estimates about a three-year supply at current rates of recovery. This recovered rosewood consists of mostly blanks measuring 1½ in. square that are currently available at a price of \$1 per linear inch. The company also hopes to be able to cut short pieces of ½-in.- to ¾-in.-thick lumber. For more information, contact Berea at (440) 234-7949.

Barring an end to the ban, it is sad to think that future generations of woodworkers may never smell that distinctive sweet aroma when working *Dalbergia nigra*.

—Mark Schofield



Waste not, want not. Reclaimed Brazilian rosewood is currently available only as turning blanks, which can be put to good use when making small parts.

Stabil now has a clamp called PC Squared. Like the Bessey, these new clamps have big, parallel jaws with a plastic bearing surface. The clamp sits upright on a bench, with the handle conveniently above the bench surface. And because the parallel feature is such a significant part of the design, all three of these clamps have been tagged with the generic name of parallel bar clamps.

A parallel bar clamp has an adjustable jaw that slides on the bar. But, when it comes to sliding, all of the jaws tended to balk on occasion, not unlike standard bar clamps. One of the four PC Squared clamps I looked at was especially balky. Indeed, it had to be held vertically to get the jaw to slide with less of a struggle.

The Cabinet Master tended to slide a bit easier than the others, but it did have a no-

table quirk. When the sliding jaw butted against the fixed jaw, it took some extra wiggling of the handle to free up the slider. And one of the four Cabinet Master clamps was especially irksome in this regard. On a few occasions, I had to insert a heavy screwdriver into the back of the jaw to pry apart the mechanism.

The Cabinet Master clamp has another nice, little feature. A stop that's mounted to the end of the bar not only prevents the adjustable jaw from inadvertently sliding off the clamp, but when the clamp is sitting upright on a workbench, the stop also serves to support the bar. That way, the end of the bar won't tip down when the adjustable jaw is positioned near the fixed jaw.

Two of the clamps—the Cabinet Master and the PC Squared—can be converted

into spreaders. In that configuration, the clamps are able to push apart things.

The clamp jaws are designed to be parallel to each other and at 90° to the bar. While none was perfect, I'd say they were all close enough. And when I clamped a 5-in.-wide board, end for end, between each of the jaws, the clamp pressure seemed to be distributed evenly along the entire length of the jaws.

Anyone in the market for a parallel bar clamp won't go wrong choosing any of these models. But they aren't cheap; a four footer will set you back about \$45.

However, as far as convenience goes, parallel bar clamps are a step ahead of typical bar and pipe clamps. If you can afford a few, you'll be rewarded with easier glue-ups.

—Tom Begnal

Electronic earmuffs turn on and off as needed

It's pretty easy to find protection that can prevent damage to your ears. But it's hard to find something that also works effectively in the shop, where you want to cut noise to a safe level but don't want your hearing blocked completely—

that can be dangerous. For example, you might not be able to tell if a machine is running. And, as a woodworking instructor, I have the added challenge of having to answer questions and listen for problems when I'm in the shop with students.

For that reason, I generally choose muffs over plugs. With a pair of muffs, I can easily slide one of them above an ear and listen to a question. Unfortunately, it's not uncommon for someone to start a screaming router right in the middle of a confab, giving my unprotected ear a blast of most unwelcome noise.

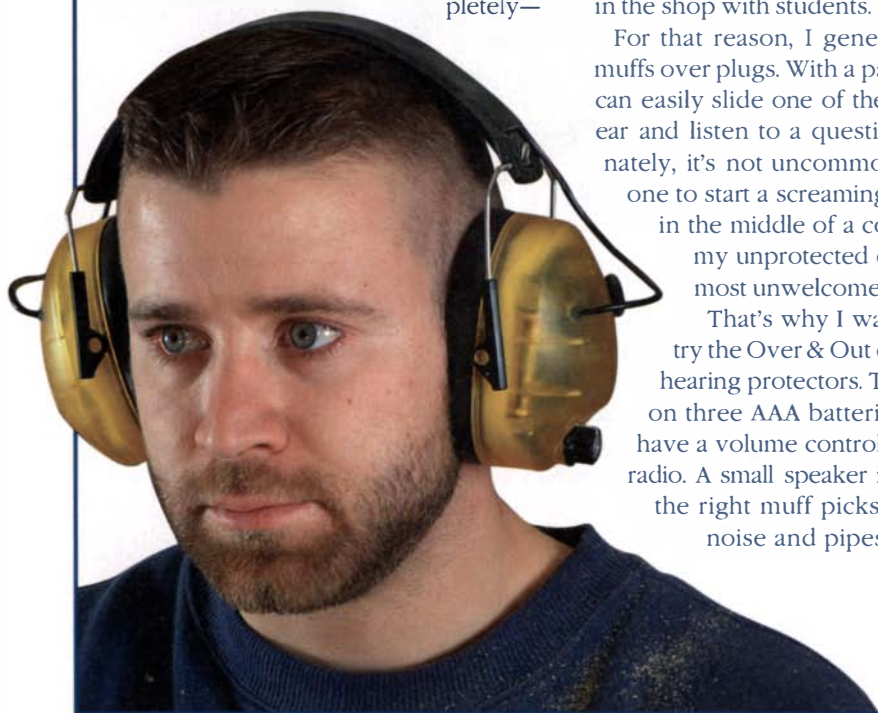
That's why I was anxious to try the Over & Out earmuff-style hearing protectors. The muffs run on three AAA batteries. And they have a volume control much like a radio. A small speaker in the side of the right muff picks up ambient noise and pipes it into both

sides of the muffs. If the noise climbs to 85 decibels—the level at which hearing damage can start to occur—an electronic circuit automatically kicks in to block the noise. When the noise drops below 85 decibels, the muffs allow you to hear normally once again.

I used the muffs for almost six weeks, and they lived up to everything I had hoped for and more. I could clearly hear machinery, movement and conversation—albeit everything sounds like it's coming from the inside of a tin can. But once a sound reaches the danger point, the electronics provide protection that's equal to any medium-duty pair of muffs.

The most pleasant surprise of all, though, was the price. At \$65, the Over & Out muffs are a deal. And, by the way, they work well at the gun range, too. For more information, contact Woodcraft at (800) 225-1153.

—Ernie Conover



Battery-powered ear protection. Three AAA batteries power built-in electronics that shut out noise only when it reaches the danger level; until then you enjoy near-normal hearing.

Inflatable roof rack installs quickly for hauling lumber and stores in trunk

I use a roof rack for carrying stuff that won't fit into my small car, but I don't like leaving the rack mounted when it isn't needed. HandiRack is a storable, compact alternative to a rigid rack.

A pair of inflatable pads, constructed of sturdy nylon fabric, carries the load. Each pad has two separate air tubes and fill valves. A web belt straps each pad to the top of a vehicle. Five D-rings provide anchor points for tying the load to the pads.

The HandiRack mounts quickly. Open the car doors (or back windows in the case of a two-door car). Lay each pad across the roof, pass webbing through the door openings, engage the buckle and snug up. Close the doors and then inflate the tubes by either blowing into the valves or using a hand pump that's supplied.

On my compact car, the fastening straps passed through the passenger compartment at the level of my forehead—a minor annoyance tolerable for short trips. Also, this strap might interfere with some shoulder harnesses, as it did in my car with an automatic shoulder restraint.



Air-cushioned ride. HandiRack quickly mounts to the top of a vehicle to give wood a secure trip home from the lumberyard.

The rack can carry up to 176 lbs. In use, it didn't generate any objectionable noise or vibration, and a load of boards felt secure at speeds of 50 to 55 mph.

The HandiRack sells for \$60 at McFeely's (800-443-7937).

—Dennis Preston

INTRODUCING TOTALLY NEW POWER TOOL

UNIVERSAL JOINER DEVICE

PATENT # 5, 875, 826

Two in One Cuts Large Mortises for Bigger Bisquits L 2 5/8 x W 2 1/8 x Th 1/4. Also Bore Holes for Dowels 1/4 or 3/8 Thick. Good for Frames, Chairs, Benches & More. *It's a New Idea for the Woodworking Industry*

68 Jay Street, Bsm. #5, Brooklyn, NY 11201

718-522-0338

VASILIOS GIOUSOS (BILLY)



COMPONENTS plus

SAVE the CAPITAL INVESTMENT of MACHINING
INNOVATIVE, READY-TO-ASSEMBLE COMPLETE 32mm SYSTEM
• RESIDENTIAL • COMMERCIAL
DOWELS INSERTED in TOPS • BOTTOMS • RAILS
SHELVES and DRAWER PARTS INCLUDED by CABINET
OPTIONS: FLAT DOORS & DRAWER FRONTS, SALICE HINGES and ALFIT SLIDES & CUSTOM BANDING
THERMOFUSED 2-SIDED MELAMINE



SIMPLIFIED ORDERING!
Just fill out the spec form and order form. VASS will do the pricing for you.



Vass

alfit > SALICE

CALL FOR A BROCHURE
PHONE 303-321-5320 • FAX 303-321-5333
3838 EUDORA WAY • DENVER, CO 80207

READER SERVICE NO. 97



Tools That Make A Difference

From the original designers of the Rout-R-Lift™JesseEm brings you the Mast-R's-Choice in Router Tables. The ALL new Mast-R-Fence™, Solid Phenolic Router Table and Solid aluminum stand.

Mast-R-Fence™ - Solid anodized aluminum, solid phenolic split sub-fence



Solid 3/4" Phenolic Table Top (no warping or sagging)

Pre-machined for your Rout-R-Lift™ or Mast-R-Plate™, built in plate adjusters.

CALL FOR A DEALER NEAREST YOU
1-800-436-6799

**Mast-R-Fence™, Table, Stand, Stop and Rout-R-Lift all sold separately

www.jessem.com

jessem@jessem.com

JesseEm Tool Company, 124 Big Bay Point Rd.
Barrie, Ontario, L4N 9B4, Canada

READER SERVICE NO. 154

Extremely Affordable/Unbelievable Quality

Discover why these European crafted machines from Rojek are fast becoming the tools of choice for America's finest woodworkers.



PK 300V CABINET SAW

- Professional sliding table
- Scoring unit built in
- European riving knife safety
- Superior dust collection

KPS 300 COMBINATION MACHINE

- Table saw/Shaper/Planer/Jointer/Mortiser
- Choice of sliding tables
- Professional precision & accuracy
- Ideal for small shops & basements

MSP 310M PLANER/JOINTER COMBINATION

- 12" Jointer & thickness planer
- Fixed jointer tables means no flipping!!
- Reduced changeover & setup

VDA 316 SLOT MORTISER

- Cut deep mortises with ease
- One-handed 360° operation
- 3.6HP motor & reversing switch
- Over 8" lateral travel

Let us make you a believer! Call toll-free:

800-787-6747

for a lifetime of woodworking



Exclusive Distributor in the United States

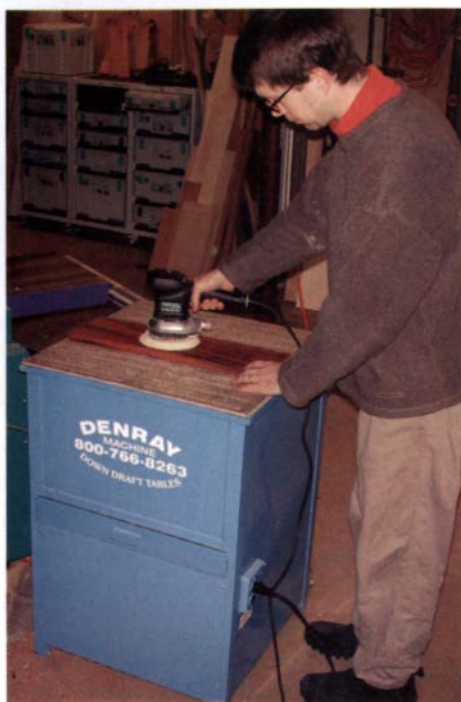
7901 Industry Dr., North Little Rock, AR 72117
Fax: 501-945-0312 • Website: www.tech-mark.com

COMBINATION MACHINES • SHAPERS • JOINTERS • PLANERS • SLIDING TABLE SAWS • SLOT MORTISERS

READER SERVICE NO. 189

ROJEK





Attacking dust at its source. Denray's compact, industrial-quality downdraft table draws air through its filter at the rate of 1,500 cubic feet per minute.

A downdraft table for the small shop

Denray is known for making big, expensive downdraft tables fit for industrial shops. But the company recently introduced a smaller, more affordable, industrial-quality table (model 2424B) that's about the size of a washing machine.

The downdraft force is gentle and does not extend beyond the edges. Because of the relatively small table size (2 ft. by 2 ft.), it does the best job when sanding small parts. A workpiece that covers most of the table, say a panel, tends to cut off the airflow. Longer pieces, such as lengths of molding, need to be moved constantly so that the area being sanded remains over the center of the table.

If you use a tool that throws chips, such as a router, don't expect the table to catch much. A three-sided box, offered by Denray as an accessory, can help—it deflects chips back into the table—but the box limits the size of the workpiece.

The Denray is useful even when you're not sanding or routing on top of it. Simply

leave it turned on when you're working in the shop and the machine becomes a shop air cleaner, drawing 1,500 cubic feet per minute through the filters. At that rate it cleared the air in my two-car garage shop pretty quickly.

The filter takes particles down to a surprisingly small 0.5 micron. However, the connection of the filter to the motor on my machine could have been better. It took some adjustment and a block of wood to make the seal perfect.

The table lists for \$849. Replacement filters are \$120. Call Denray at (800) 766-8263 for a local dealer. —*Strother Purdy*

Roland Johnson is a woodworker in Sauk Rapids, Minn.; Mark Schofield is assistant editor; Tom Begnal is an associate editor; Ernie Conover is a woodworking writer and teacher in Parkman, Ohio; Dennis Preston is a woodworker and engineer in Brookfield, Conn.; Strother Purdy is a furniture maker in Bridgewater, Conn.

NEW! The Leigh FMT Mortise and Tenon Jig



Finally a jig designed to create mortise and tenons in one quick easy setup!

FMT features:

- Unique patented guide system
- Joints of any size from 1/2" x 5" down to a tiny 1/16" x 3/32"
- Use on matches or stock up to 3" x 5 1/2" (mortise) and 2 3/4" x 5 1/2" (tenon)
- Easy fingertip adjustment of joint tightness
- Make angled and compound angled joints
- Rout perfectly aligned double, triple and quadruple joints
- Use virtually any plunge router
- Uses 1/2" shank cutters
- Cam-action speed-clamps
- Integral dust port for vacuum

Call For Your Free Leigh FMT Brochure Today! 1-800-663-8932
 Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357, Port Coquitlam, BC, Canada V3C 4K6
 Tel. 604 464-2700 Fax 604 464-7404 Web www.leighjigs.com

LEIGH
 Joining Tradition With Today

See the affordable Lamello Classic C2 Swiss Biscuit Joiner



- New swivel front fence: 0° to 90° with notches at 22.5°, 45° & 67.5°
- New increased maximum depth
- New extra-flat anti-slip pads
- New stop square for vertical work

Power, precision and balanced design for use on wood, laminates, solid surface and aluminum materials.

Purchase online at www.csaw.com or call 1-800-252-6355
 E-Mail: lamello@csaw.com

COLONIAL SAW
 MACHINERY SALES AND SERVICE

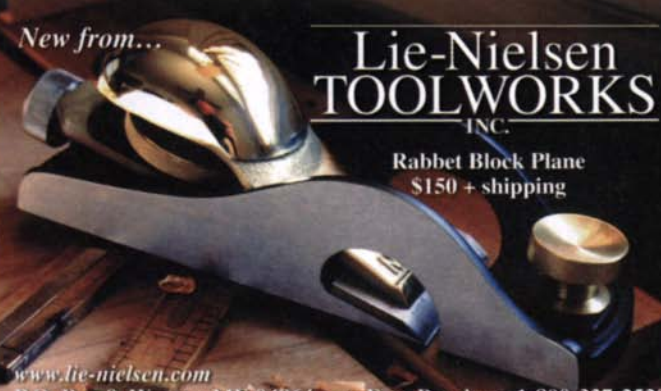
"Simply the Best"

FREE Color Catalog

READER SERVICE NO. 92

New from...

Lie-Nielsen TOOLWORKS INC.



Rabbet Block Plane
 \$150 + shipping

www.lie-nielsen.com
 P.O. Box 9, Warren ME 04864 Free Brochure 1-800-327-2520

READER SERVICE NO. 24

HEARNE HARDWOODS, INC.

Specializing in Pennsylvania Cherry

Plain & Figured Cherry from 4/4 to 16/4
Also: Premium Walnut, Figured Maple, wide
planks & a large variety of exceptionally fine
domestic & imported woods including free form
slabs, turning blanks, burls, & instrument lumber.

National & International Shipping

200 Whiteside Dr., Oxford, PA 19363

ph 610-932-7400 fax 610-932-3130

email hearnehardwoods@chesco.com

Toll Free 1-888-814-0007

READER SERVICE NO. 118

Save Money—saw your own lumber.



LT15G13 Personal Sawmill

\$4995

Make Money—saw for others.

- Cut logs up to 28" D. x 11' L.
- Extra bed sections permit longer lengths.
- Easily transportable.
- Video available.

Wood-Mizer®

Number One in Worldwide Sawmill Sales

www.woodmizer.com

**Free \$2!
Catalog!**

8180 W. 10th St. Dept. FW1
Indianapolis, IN 46214

Prices & specifications subject to change w/o notice

Call for the location
nearest you!

1-800-553-0219

READER SERVICE NO. 121

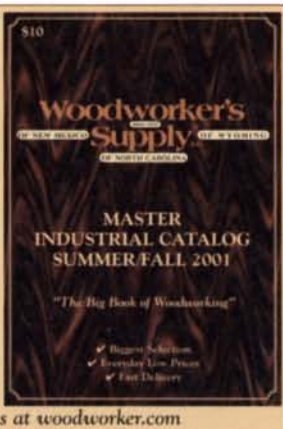
If you are in a
woodworking
business...
this could be the
most valuable tool
in your office™.

Please call
1-800-645-9292
for your 420 page
catalog.

FREE
to woodworking
businesses.

visit us at woodworker.com

READER SERVICE NO. 46



Inkra
Twin Linear

- Dual carriage, split fence universal woodworking system for the router or shaper table
- Infeed and outfeed carriages lock together for making box joints and dovetail joinery
- True splinter-free, zero clearance operation – the quick, easy and safe way

Call for
FREE VIDEO
BROCHURE

Woodpeckers Inc.

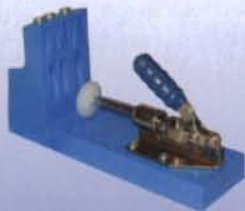
The Inkra Tool Source

www.woodpeck.com 1-800-752-0725



Pocket Hole Systems

**Have you discovered the
Pocket Hole Advantage?**



Kreg offers solutions to all of
your joinery needs with
Pocket Hole Systems from \$20
including our most popular
pocket hole tool, the
Kreg Jig ProPack.



www.kregtool.com

1-800-447-8638

READER SERVICE NO. 42

Stop Day Dreaming

Free Video

Have a Knapp

There is simply no other
combination machine on
the planet, built to such
a high level of quality.

Each machine is custom tailored to meet your demands.

The Knapp has a sliding table with virtually no deflection; Cured cast-iron work surfaces throughout; Dovetail raising and lowering mechanisms; Self cleaning threads; Separate jointer and tablesaw fence. It's built more like a metal working machine.

You must see it to believe it!

Call to order our free comprehensive
demonstration video today.

LAGUNA TOOLS

Fine European Woodworking Machinery

800-234-1976

www.lagunatools.com • E-mail: mail@lagunatools.com

17101 Murphy Ave., Irvine, CA 92614 (949) 474-1200

READER SERVICE NO. 210



Choosing and Using Brushes

The right brush and a good technique make finishing a pleasure

BY DAVID SORG

Brushing on a finish involves considerably less expense, space and even danger than spraying. The results can be as perfect as any sprayed finish, requiring only a little more time. I earn an added bonus when using a brush instead of a spray gun. Holding the brush, dipping it into the finish and then letting it glide onto the wood brings my project to life and provides me with a unique satisfaction. Choosing the right brush can save you hours in application speed and ease of use. Proper technique will help you avoid or minimize mistakes and brush marks.

I have two rules when it comes to buying a finishing brush. First, don't buy anything with a plastic handle. I've never seen a high-quality brush that didn't have a wooden handle. Use the plastic-handled ones for staining wood or painting your shed.

The second rule of thumb is to buy the best brush you can afford. To put things in perspective, for less than the cost of a good router you can buy a set of top-of-the-line brushes that will meet all of your finishing needs. No wonder my woodworking friends are jealous.

Brushes can be divided into four broad

categories: natural bristle, synthetic bristle, artist's brushes and nonbrushes, such as foam wedges and pads. I will guide you through each group and suggest which brushes will match your preferred type of finish and the piece you are finishing.

Natural bristles are the prima donnas of brushes

Natural-bristle brushes are considered the best choice for lacquer, shellac and oil-based finishes. These brushes can hold more finish than their synthetic alternatives, an important issue for flowing shellac or lacquer. With these finishes you must maintain a wet edge, and the fewer the trips to recharge the brush, the better. Natural-bristle brushes seem to transmit a better feel for even finish distribution. I can more easily sense the degree of slickness or drag beneath the natural bristles, especially when tipping off to achieve a smooth surface. But I'd be the first to admit that it may just be the fact that I've been using natural bristles for nearly 20 years.

The disadvantages of natural bristles include a faster rate of wear and breakage of the bristles (which are a pain to pick out of

your finish coat, especially if it's fast-drying lacquer or shellac), and they are harder to clean than synthetics.

Synthetic brushes are getting better

A few years ago you would have used a synthetic brush only with a water-based finish. But synthetic brushes have come a long way since the early days of blunt-ended nylon bristles. Tynex and Chinex are among the brand names you'll see on better full-sized brushes. The latest addition from Purdy is Syntox. When applying alkyd varnish, a Syntox brush leaves as few brush marks as a natural-bristle brush does, and it works as well with water-based finishes as any other brush I've tried.

For smaller areas, choose an artist's brush

Artist's brushes are made from a variety of natural and synthetic materials. For \$3 to \$6 you can get 1/8-in. and 1/4-in. brushes made from synthetic Taklon that are useful for touch-ups. A 1-in. brush is handy for small projects, such as drawers, or thin edges. The most useful artist's brush for applying shellac or solvent varnishes is the 1 1/2-in. or

BRUSH TYPES, SIZES AND SHAPES

NATURAL

Natural bristles are still the standard that synthetic ones try to match. Most people associate badger hair with natural bristle, but pure badger-hair brushes are too soft for applying most finishes. The stiffest bristles are hog or Chinese bristle, which come as either white or the slightly stiffer black. Most all-purpose natural-bristle brushes are a blend of hog bristles and either badger or ox hairs. Costing \$20 to \$30, natural-bristle brushes are expensive. And because natural-bristle brushes absorb so much water and become limp, they are not a good choice for water-based products.

SYNTHETIC

Synthetic bristles used to be confined to water-based finishes that were unsuitable for natural bristles. They have always been cheaper and easier to maintain than their natural counterparts, and as their quality has improved, growing numbers of finishers are switching to them for all types of finishes. Names of some of the better bristles are Chinex, Tynex and Syntox, but avoid bristles described only as nylon, polyester or a blend of the two.

OVAL BRUSHES FOR LARGE AREAS

If you have a large surface to finish, consider purchasing a brush with an oval-shaped ferrule (the metal band between the handle and the bristles). These brushes can hold a lot of material, allowing large areas to be finished before reloading. However, it's more difficult to obtain a smooth surface using an oval brush.



ARTIST'S BRUSHES FOR SMALL AREAS

Artist's brushes can fit into tight areas. The 1½-in. wash brush with synthetic Taklon bristles will apply a final coat of thinned shellac or oil-based finish that leaves almost no brush marks. Expect to pay \$25 to \$55 for these brushes.



Small brushes for tight spots. Artist's brushes can reach areas that larger brushes can't.

THREE SIZES TO FIT YOUR NEEDS

A 3-in. brush, a 2½-in. angled sash brush and a 1½-in. brush with either natural or synthetic bristles cover most finishing requirements in woodworking. An angled sash brush can cover wide surfaces and get into tight spots. In general, always use the largest brush that can fit into the area to be finished. The carrying capacity of the larger brush means fewer trips to the can to reload and makes it easier to maintain a wet edge and avoid overlap streaks.

SOURCES OF SUPPLY

Purdy brushes can be viewed at www.purdycorp.com and are available at most paint stores and home-improvement centers. Specialized natural- or synthetic-bristle brushes can be purchased at the following web sites: www.finepaints.com and www.homesteadfinishing.com.

FINISHING A TABLETOP

Load the brush



Strain the finish. After a can has been opened several times, dried finish collects around the lid and bits of skimmed-over finish may be floating inside. Remove all of this debris by passing the finish through a paint strainer.

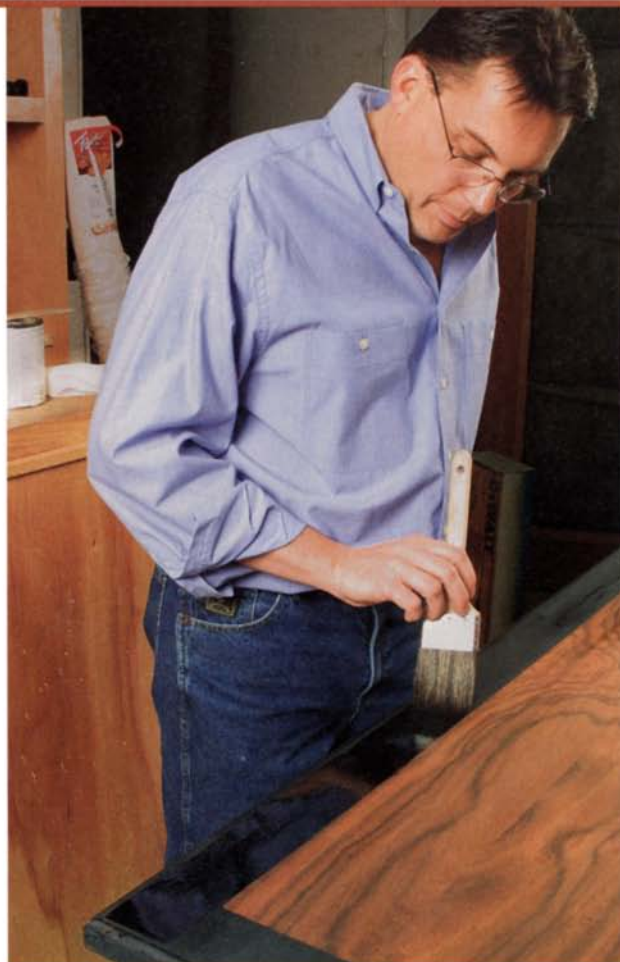


Clearly better. Pouring some finish into an empty container allows you to thin only the finish you'll use. Select a container that the brush easily enters, and adjust the volume to reach halfway up the bristles.



Adjust the load. Push the brush gently against the side of the container to strain out the desired amount of finish. Do not scrape the brush against the rim of the container because it can cause bubbles in the liquid.

Start at the edge



Begin just inside the corner of the table. Continue about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. from the edge closest to you. After exhausting the finish, come back and brush off the edge where the stroke began.



Then pull off the edge. Short strokes with the tip of the brush finish the edge of the table. A curved profile is the hardest edge to finish because of the lack of a clearly defined boundary.



Continue the first strip. Start in the dry area and brush back into the feathered edge before reversing direction and carrying on to the far edge.

2-in. wash brush. Offered by companies such as Winsor & Newton, a wash brush is a very soft blend of Taklon and natural bristles (or pure Taklon). It allows you to float or "wash" on thinned-down finishes (see "All About Thinning Finishes," *FWW* #151, pp. 86-91) with virtually no brush marks.

Use foam pads and wedges for stains and first coats

Last, and generally least, are the nonbrushes—foam wedges and pads that come on the end of a handle. These are cheap and useful for staining and applying first coats of most clear finishes where much of the product will be wiped or sanded off. But be cautious using them with lacquers,

which may melt the foam. Also, the alcohol in shellac may dissolve the glue that attaches the foam to the handle.

Because material from these pads is squeezed out by applying more pressure, achieving an even finish is difficult. Particularly with pieces that have lots of edges, moldings or carvings, you're more likely to get runs as you try to make the pad conform to the contours of the piece.

Don't be in a rush to brush

Much as the steering wheel of a sports car transmits the feel of the road, with experience you'll be able to sense when the brush is flowing material onto the surface at the proper rate. You'll feel the subtle differences between areas that are puddled

Work across the top



Prevent pooling. With thicker finishes, leave a gap between strokes.



Blend the lines together. The tip-off stroke fills the gap, creating a finish of uniform thickness.



Look out for puddles. Occasionally look at your work from a low angle to check that the finish is being applied evenly. Slow-drying finishes can be leveled simply by rebrushing.

too thickly and the extra drag from spots that have been skipped entirely.

Developing this feel takes practice. Make up a sample in the same wood and in some of the same profiles that appear in your project. Aside from helping you decide which brush feels right for the job, the sample will help you determine a finishing schedule; the correct stain color; how many coats to apply; whether thinning is necessary; when to sand and with what paper; and how the final finish will feel and look.

The easiest way to finish a project is to take it apart into its smallest components. It is also important to determine what order you will brush the various surfaces of your project. Dovetailed drawer fronts, in partic-

ular, are much easier to finish cleanly when not yet attached to their (usually) unstained and/or unfinished sides.

Remove all hardware or carefully mask any that must remain. In general, work from the top down, from the inside out, from a panel to its stiles and rails. The goal is to reduce the number of wet edges that you must try to keep so that the finish can integrate or melt into itself without leaving brush marks or ridges. Try to break down everything to a series of small panels, strips of moldings, or blocks of carvings.

Getting the brush wet

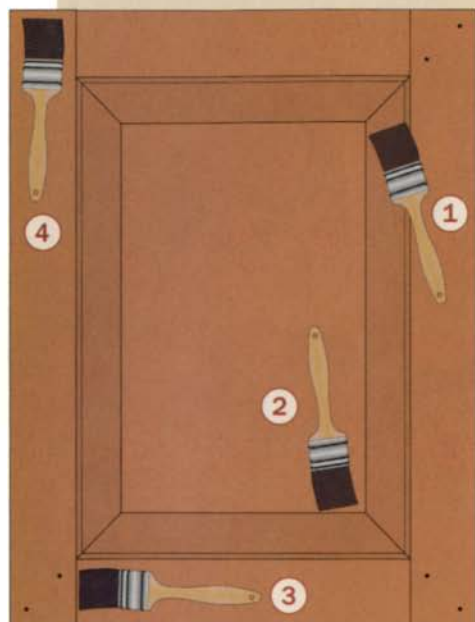
After straining the finish into another container and adjusting its viscosity (see the left photos on the facing page), if neces-

sary, load the brush with the finish material. It's important to pay attention to how much finish you are placing into each brush load. Too much material, and you'll drip finish across the surface as you head for the area to be worked, or it will puddle the moment you lay the brush on the surface. If you pick up too little, it will mean more trips to the can and more time for wet edges to set up before the next brush load gets there.

Adjust each brush load for its intended surface; for instance, a flat tabletop takes all you can give it, while a $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-wide by 12-in.-long drawer edge barely needs the tips of the bristles wetted.

Start each panel at the edge farthest from you. This way, if you drip onto unfinished

FINISHING A RAISED PANEL



Paint by numbers

Brush a raised panel in the following order to achieve a flawless finish:

1. Start on the panel bevel, working away from a corner.
2. Treat the panel center like a small tabletop.
3. Brush the rails of the frame.
4. Finish the stiles—brushing off, not onto, either end.
5. With the tip of a barely wet brush, finish the edge last.



1 **Begin with the bevel.** Bring down the brush away from a corner to avoid pooling the finish. Brush with the grain whenever possible. Once the stroke has been completed, use the tips of the bristles to push a small amount of finish into the corner.



- 2** **Think of the panel as an aircraft carrier.** Land the brush inside the near edge of the panel and continue the stroke until you “fly off” the far edge.



Watch it on the web

To see a video clip of David Sorg brushing a raised panel, go to www.finewoodworking.com.

areas, you'll be able to go right over the drips. If practical, work with the grain.

Takeoffs and landings on tabletops

On your first stroke you have two edges—one parallel to the grain and direction of the brush stroke and one perpendicular to the grain and stroke. Land the brush just in from the perpendicular edge and move it about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. from the parallel edge until you run out of finish. Don't lean on the brush. Now return to where you started the stroke and brush off the perpendicular edge. The biggest cause of runs and drips is brushing onto an edge, which allows surplus liquid to dribble down the side of your project.

Finally, reverse the direction of the brush

and lightly glide it from where the original stroke ended and go off the perpendicular edge. This process is called tipping off and should leave an even amount of finish that is as wide, or slightly wider than, the width of the brush. On a small surface, you may be able to go right off the other perpendicular edge as well. In this case, your tip-off stroke will be more like an airplane touch-and-go landing, coming in lightly an inch or so from one edge and taking off at its opposite edge.

On a larger surface, you have two choices for beginning your next stroke with a recharged brush. Some prefer to bring down the brush just inside the wet area where it began to thin out, then continue

on toward the far edge. Others prefer to begin a few inches into the dry area, brushing toward the feathered edge and into it, then reversing the stroke and carrying it toward the far edge. Which technique you choose will depend partly on how fast you work; for example, with lacquer and shellac you run a risk of pulling out the drying finish if you start inside of it.

Continue your finishing pattern until you reach the far edge—spreading out a brush full of material, then tipping off to merge the stroke with the previous one.

Begin the next stroke by laying down the edge of the brush either immediately next to the first stroke or slightly separated from it. With thin shellacs and lacquers that will



3 *The rails need special attention. If the rails butt into the stiles, brush the rails first, starting and stopping as close to the joint as possible.*



4 *Brush the stiles as you would a tabletop. Start inside the near end, continuing to the far end, then come back to brush off the near edge.*



5 *Leave the edge until last. Apply a line of finish using the tip of the brush, then pull it off each edge.*

melt into each other, I usually lay up the edges to the previous stroke or even overlap them slightly. With thick varnishes, I keep the strokes separated, then blend the edges by tipping off. Water-based varnishes require this blending to be done quickly; oil varnishes give you plenty of time.

Continue until you complete the panel, checking the adjacent edges for any rollover that can be wiped off an otherwise dry surface. If the other surface is wet, it's best to let the drip dry and sand it rather than try to brush it out.

Run-free raised panels

Start with the bevel surrounding the center panel. Beginning the brush stroke right in

a corner tends to cause pooling. If anything, interior corners can be starved of finish to yield a crisper look. Start the stroke $\frac{1}{8}$ in. away and discharge the brush as you head for the opposite corner. Come back with the nearly dry brush to blend the beginning of the stroke into the first corner.

Brush the flat section of the panel the same way you would a small tabletop: Start the stroke just inside one edge and brush off the far edge. Return to brush off the first edge, and finally tip off the whole strip with a touch-and-go pattern, avoiding brushing onto either edge.

Then do the strip of molding that surrounds the panel, or the entire rail or stile if there is no decorative edge. If the rails butt

into the stiles, brush the rails first, starting and stopping as close to the joint as possible (slightly over the edge onto the stile is better than coming up short of it). For these strokes, you'll want a slightly less loaded brush because you're going to stroke to a line instead of going off an edge, and you don't want to leave a roll of material. With oil-based varnishes you can just stroke right out onto the stile because it will stay wet long enough to be picked up when you brush the stile. Finally, finish the edges of the whole assembly.

Brushing narrow boards

Brushing a board that is wider than the width of your brush but not as wide as two brush widths is tricky. Brush a coat of finish down the middle of the board, stroke out to each of the three remaining edges, then tip off with a couple of strokes parallel to the grain.

If the board is narrower than your brush, turn the brush on an angle to make its effective width the same as the wood. This is where an angled sash brush is often convenient. When you are brushing edges of boards or doors, hold the brush perpendicular to the surface and use just the tip to lay a bead of finish down the center of the strip from one end to the other. Again, using the tip of the brush, spread the center roll of material to each edge across the grain. Last, do a long, light tip-off stroke following the grain.

Carvings and latticework

Carvings can be finished in shellac or lacquer by using a small artist's brush. First, coat undercuts and recesses with a lightly loaded brush, then brush the tops and primary surfaces, allowing the edges of the finish to melt together. Additional coats are usually just placed on highlights that can be lightly sanded, if necessary. Surfaces that will be rubbed and polished require more finish.

When brushing oil varnish, apply it more liberally, then pick out any pools with a discharged brush. To even out the coverage in the area, use a dry brush and work in short, vertical motions (called stippling). Water-based finishes can be worked in a similar manner, but in small sections to keep the working area wet. □

David Sorg is a professional finisher and artist in Denver, Colo.

Arts and Crafts Bed

Router templates help create smooth curves
and tight joinery

BY GARY ROGOWSKI

Your mother was right. You do have to lie in the bed you made. I think you'll find this more a blessing than a curse when you make this Arts and Crafts bed. The key is to be mindful that you're building on a larger scale than is probably normal for you. Constructing a bed requires a different approach than a smaller piece does.

Breaking down this bed into its several parts will make planning and assembling it much more manageable. Working with a

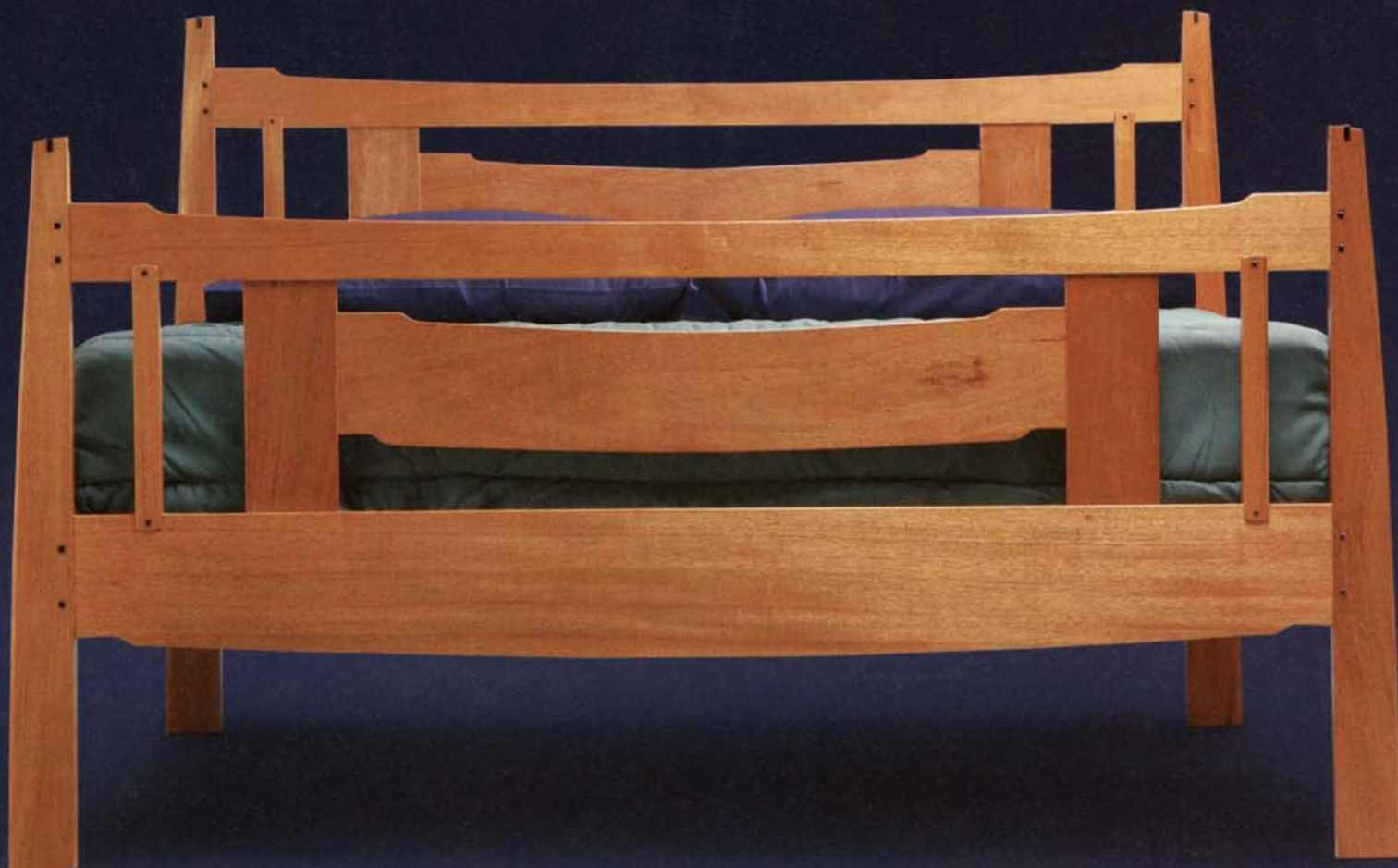
queen-sized mattress means you'll be building a rectangular frame about 61 in. by 82 in. (includes extra space for bed-clothes). The ends of this frame consist of another two frames, the headboard and footboard. So frame construction, albeit on a large scale, is all that faces you.

Build the headboard and footboard frames from the outside in: posts and long rails first, then vertical pieces and finally the center rails. Working your way in from the large to the small is an important

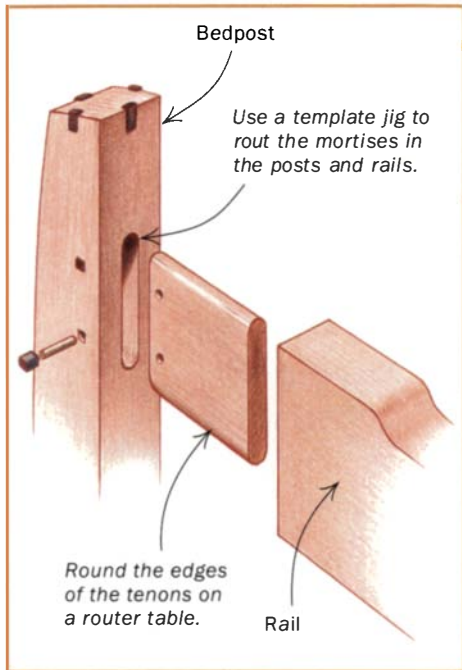
tactic for this project: You will dry-fit the outside pieces to get true dimensions for the internal members. Later, the glue-up will go in the reverse order, from inside to outside.

Full-sized drawings are invaluable

Certain design elements seem to fit quite naturally into this style of piece, such as the gently curved and tapered posts that meet the floor with a solid presence and the cloud lift, an element of Chinese furniture



Use a simple jig for the floating tenons



that Greene and Greene appropriated in the early 20th century. The cloud lift—a small S-curve, combined with a long, sweeping curve—appears in a few ways in this piece.

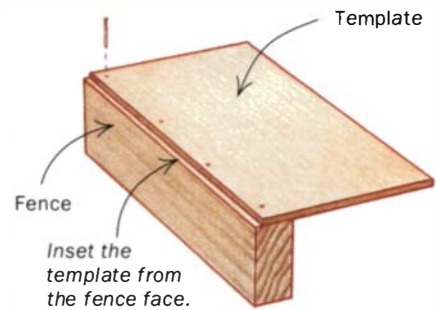
Texture in a piece is always important. I decided that inlaying raised strips of ebony in the post tops would give a stopping point for the eye and hand. The carved square plugs would do the same where I had pinned the joints. By stepping down the thicknesses of each adjacent part toward the center of the bed, I created shadow lines, another form of texture.

I finalized the design in a set of full-sized drawings. A full-sized drawing not only gives even better information about proportion, form, balance and negative space, but it also lets you plan out the details, seeing how they will work in the piece. I also use full-sized drawings to find graceful curves—bending a thin stick of oak, using a few weights to hold it in place, and tracing against it.

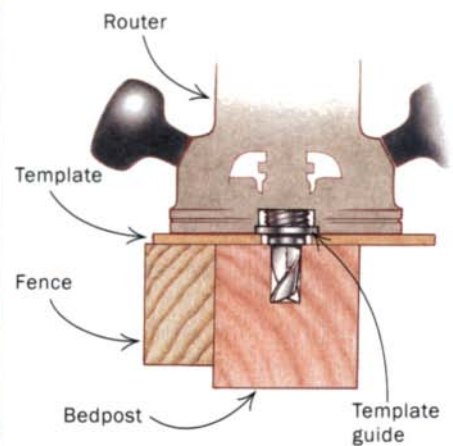
Because the headboard and footboard are symmetrical around their centerlines, I only had to make half views of each. Likewise, most of the template has to cover only half of the full profile.

Knockdown hardware is best for beds

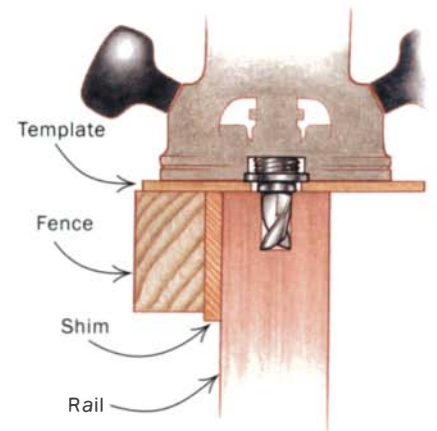
You'll need to remember one important fact: Once you build a bed, you must be able to get it out of your shop and into the



Make the template on the router table. Attach a hardwood fence to the $\frac{1}{4}$ -in.-thick MDF template, leaving it slightly proud of the edge. Lay out the slots and drill starter holes to make it easier to rout the slots.



Mortise the posts first. Place the workpiece in a vise and clamp on the template. Take a few passes to get down to full depth, and stop often to vacuum out the chips.



Template routing is easy on the ends of long rails. The rail is thinner than the post, so to center these mortises you must insert a shim between the workpiece and the template fence.

bedroom. Therefore, it needs to be a knockdown design.

I use a wedging, locking style of hardware that is pounded together. The more weight you place on it, the more it locks into position. Also, this knockdown hardware is invisible when the parts are joined, better suiting the style of the bed. It requires mortising into both the post and the rail, but template routing takes care of this job. The mortises make this type of knockdown hardware much stronger than other screw-on types.

Note: Because end grain doesn't grip screw threads as well as long grain, use 3-in.-long screws to attach the male side to the ends of the rails.

Bag the box spring

Many people believe the combination of box spring and mattress is the only way to rest easy. But consider that the purpose of the box spring is to provide spring, support and ventilation for the mattress. All of this can be accomplished—at a fraction of the cost—by a row of slats laid on ledger strips (which are glued and screwed to the side rails). The slats are spaced out by means of dowels set into the ledger strips.

This bed is designed for a mattress or a futon alone. With this setup, most of the headboard will be seen, even if some well-meaning soul throws a gaggle of pillows across it.

If you're using a box spring and need more depth inside the rails, you can use an angle-iron ledger strip placed at the bot-

tom of the rail to buy yourself a couple of inches more.

Long pieces demand special techniques

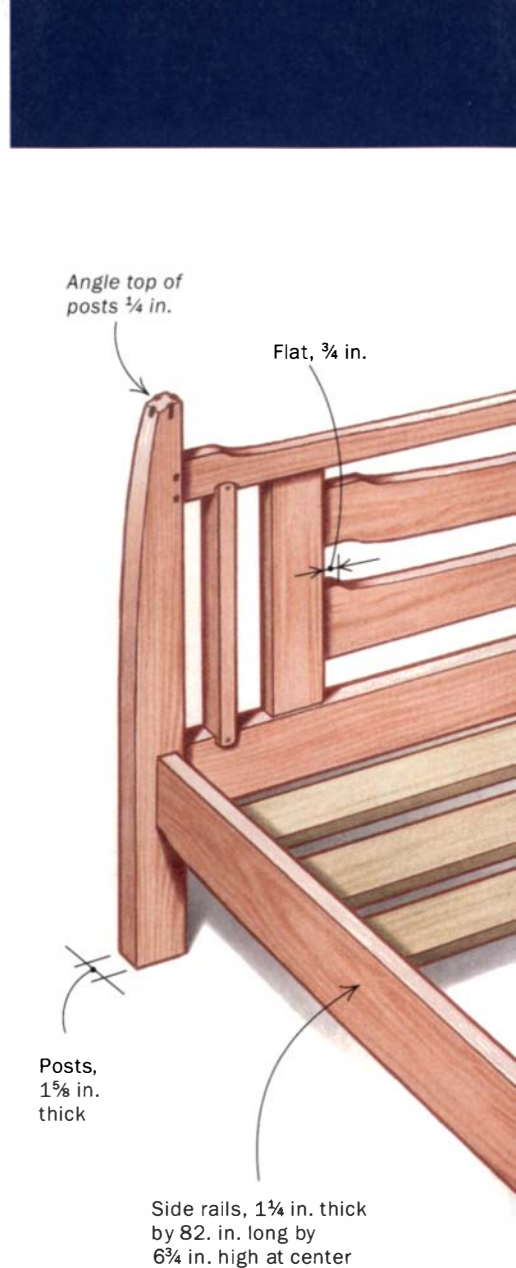
Rough-mill your stock $\frac{1}{8}$ in. over in thickness and width and let it sit stickered for about a week to acclimate to your shop environment. Then mill it straight and flat. After cutting away the waste areas on the shaped pieces, let them sit for a while as well, then mill the square sides straight.

Accurate crosscuts—When cutting the long rails to length, use a crosscut sled with an extra board on the extension table to support the long rails. I use the insert table from my planer, which is the same thickness as my crosscut sled. Also, to index each cut, clamp a long stick to the sled with a stop attached. Be careful that the stick doesn't flex when you place the rail against the stop.

Floating tenons for the post-to-rail joint

Once boards get more than 4 ft. in length, like these top and bottom rails, it becomes difficult to cut accurate tenons in the stock. So to join the thick, heavy posts and rails, I used floating tenons, which require only mortises. I cut the mortises with a mortising template and a plunge router fitted with a guide bushing (see the photos and drawings on p. 45). This setup makes it easy to cut identical mortises into both the posts and the ends of the long rails.

I always use a double tenon in rails that



Make templates for routing the long curves



Design the curves using a flexible batten. Rogowski lays out the curves on full-sized drawings of the footboard and the headboard. Only half of each symmetrical view is necessary.

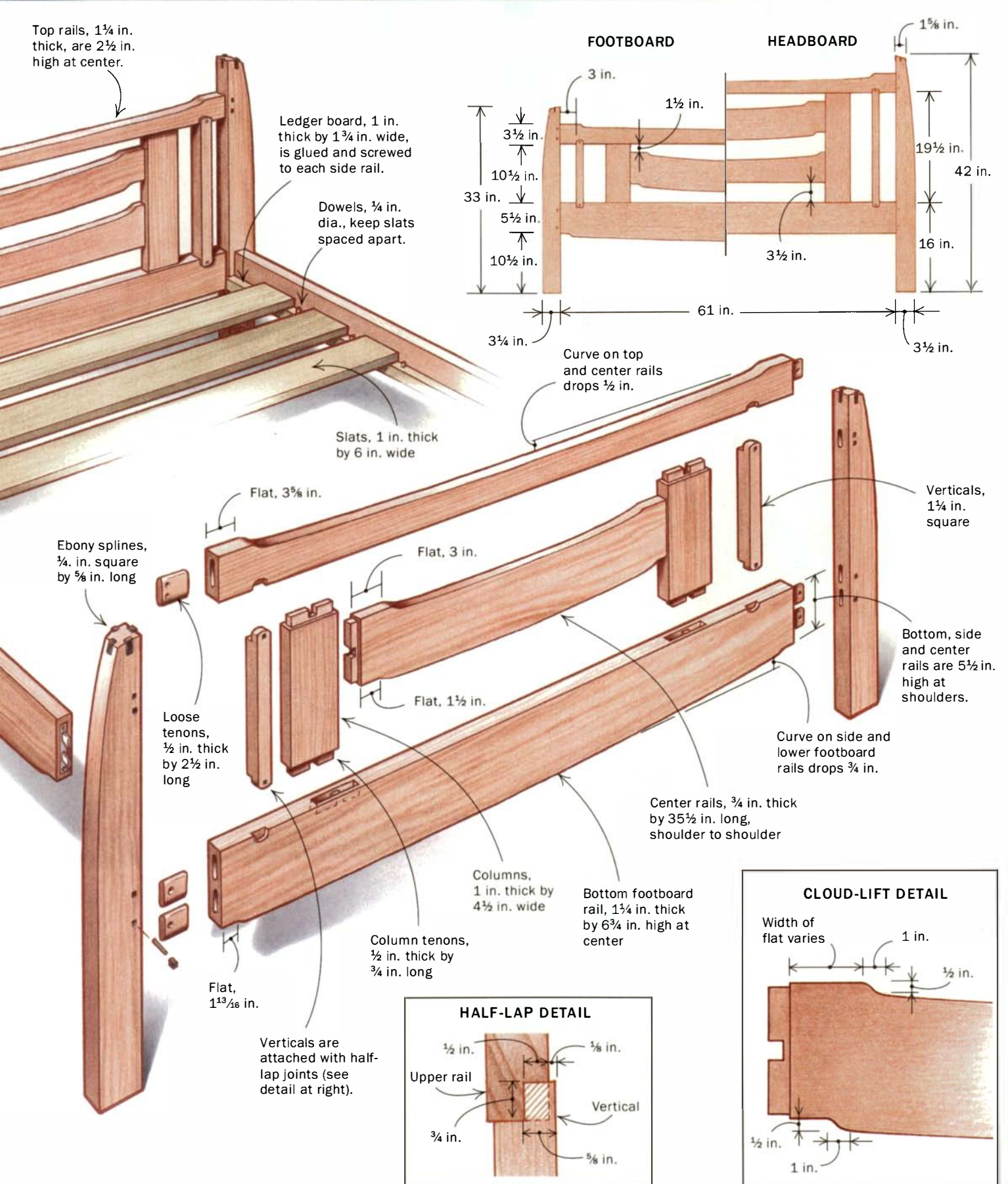


Lay out the same curve on a template. Take the beginning and ending points for the arc from the drawings, then connect the points using the same batten technique.

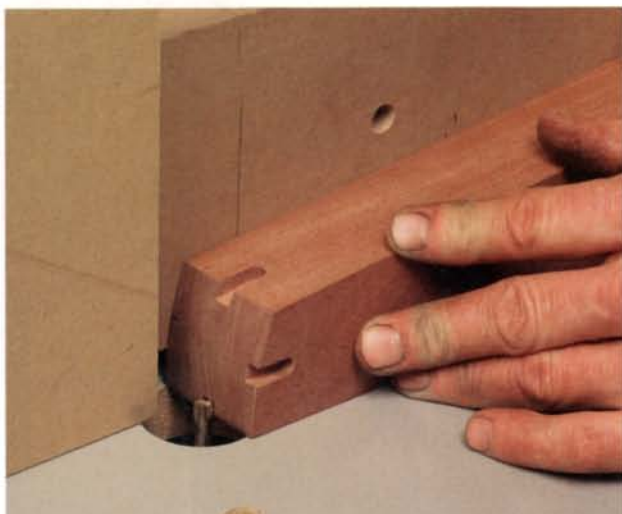


Rout the curve one half at a time. Only a half template is needed. Use a bearing-guided bit and work downhill, with the grain. Then flip the workpiece and reattach the template.

MAHOGANY BED COMBINES GRACEFUL CURVES AND CLEVER JOINERY



Decorate the posts with splines



When routing the grooves, use a stop block. The tip of the post is angled, so you must reset the stop for each groove. Square the ends of the grooves with a mortising chisel (right).



Plane the ebony stock to fit. Get it close on the tablesaw, then use a block plane to creep up on a tight fit.



Soften the edges with a chisel. After gluing the ebony splines into place, pare and sand them to a gentle curve.

are more than 4 in. wide, to allow for seasonal movement across the grain. On this headboard and footboard, the bottom rails get double tenons.

Mortising templates—Make the mortising templates for the floating tenons out of medium-density fiberboard (MDF) and poplar. Lay out the slot on the underside of the template, figuring in the difference in diameter between the guide bushing and the bit. Lay out the template to center the mortise in the leg thickness.

Drill an undersized hole in the template at the end of each slot so that it's easier to locate the template over the spinning bit and to make the plunge cut easier. Also, if you use a router bit that is the exact diameter as your guide bushing, you'll be able to cut the slot in the template in one pass.

Before cutting the post mortises, rough out the curves on the bandsaw and mill the square sides flat. Make a template of an entire post and trace it onto the stock, aligning the grain for the best look and placing the tapered sections back to back to make best use of the material. Be aware that the posts in the headboard in this design are a bit wider than those in the footboard.

The center pieces receive standard mortises and tenons

After fitting the floating tenons, you can shape the long rail curves (I'll cover that

shortly), then put the frames together dry to check the distance between rails. Cut your verticals and columns to match this distance, plus their tenons, of course.

The wide tenons on the columns should be split into a haunched, double tenon. It just so happens that the same template you used for the floating tenons fits this mortise perfectly. Cut the two outer mortises using the template and a shim. Then move the template over, reset the bit depth and clear out for the center haunch.

Do your final fitting of the tenons by hand with a bullnose or shoulder plane. Remember, you shouldn't be able to knock your mortise-and-tenon joints together with your hat or have to use a hammer. A shoehorn fit is best.

Dry-fit the frame to check that your column shoulders snug up nicely to the long rails. You may need a clamp to pull them all the way home. Then check that the rails still fit into the post mortises. When everything fits well, check the distance between the columns to determine the length of the center rails.

Cut the center rails and lay out their mortises on the columns. Design these joints to be the same for all three center rails (two on the headboard, one on the footboard) so that you can make up only one mortising template. Cut these mortises and square their ends. After trimming the tenons to fit, you can shape the center rails.

Use half-lap joints for the verticals

The narrow verticals are let into the front side of the long rails with a half-lap joint. I wanted the vertical member to sit $\frac{1}{8}$ in. proud of the rail; inlaying its end lets you leave more material there after cutting away for the lap joint.

Start by notching the ends of the verticals. (It's a good idea to do this at the same time you make the wider center columns. This way you can cut the shoulders for the lap joints while you cut the shoulders on the tenoned center columns, ensuring they all are the same length.) Each vertical has a slight curve on its ends; the radius is $2\frac{9}{32}$ in.

Use a drum or disc sander to shape the curved ends. These tools won't chip off the end grain the way a router bit will. After shaping the verticals, back-bevel the ends slightly.

With the ends of the verticals shaped and the notches cut away, lay the pieces onto the dry-fitted headboard or footboard. Use



Undercut the curved tip for a better fit. Place a thin shim under the workpiece and take light, even passes to back-bevel the end. This will make the joint easier to fit.

a 3-in. spacer to set them the right distance away from the posts, and use a knife to lay-out the mating recesses on the rails.

Rout the rails to depth freehand, coming as close to the layout lines as you can. Use a climb cut to prevent cutting past the line and a shallow gouge to finish up the curved cuts. When you finally fit these verticals into place, the undercut tips should fill up the recesses perfectly.

Templates also handle the curves

There are many curved parts on this bed, with long, sweeping arcs and tighter cloud-lift curves. It is inestimably simpler to shape each profile just once on a ¼-in.-thick MDF template and pattern-route the pieces than it is to draw the curves on all of the pieces and shape them individually. The only exception is the posts, where I went straight from the bandsaw to a bench plane.

Aside from the posts, all of the other curved profiles are symmetrical around a center point. So you need only half templates, which can be flipped over to cover the entire profile. Lay out the curves on your full-sized drawings and then your templates using a ⅛-in.-thick piece of oak or ash. Mark the high and low end points and use weights to hold the stick in place while you mark out a pleasing curve. Bandsaw the profile as close to the line as you can. Sand off the high spots, then smooth the long curves with a bench or block plane. Check the template often for high spots, dips or bad transitions. Use a spokeshave or drum sander to clean up the concave areas, and sandpaper on the transitions. (Make your templates smooth, and

Scribe and fit the half-lapped verticals



Use the workpiece itself to lay out its mating recesses. A spacer block keeps the verticals parallel to the posts for layout. Use a marking knife to scribe around the ends.



A router sets the depth of the recesses. Use the tool freehand, staying away from the layout lines. Test-fit to check the depth.



Pare to the layout lines for final fitting. Use a shallow gouge with a sweep just tighter than the curve of the recess.



Mortise in the knockdown hardware

These plates are inlaid into the rails and posts, providing a strong, hidden joint that knocks down easily.



Rout the mortise for the hardware using a template-and-bushing router setup. The mortise depth is critical to the joint coming together properly. After routing, square the corners of this shallow mortise.



Lay out the recesses for the hooks. Remember that the hooks will be inserted straight inward, but then travel downward.



Rout the recesses freehand. The male plate will also need slight recesses behind it, to accommodate the back ends of the hooks, which protrude slightly. Use longer screws in the end grain of the rails, where threads don't grip as well.



you will have only minimal cleanup to do after the router operation. Time invested here will pay off many times over.)

Use the templates to lay out the curves, and then bandsaw to within $\frac{1}{2}$ in. of the line. Attach the templates to the parts with double-stick tape or use a carriage jig like the one shown on p. 46 (bottom right photo). The jig is simply a piece of $\frac{1}{4}$ -in.-thick

MDF with a strip of hardwood for attaching hold-down clamps. Both the stock and the template are clamped down in one shot, and the clamps provide safe handles for controlling the operation.

Use a flush-trimming bit on the router table to shape the curves. To avoid tearout, cut downhill, with the grain. You may need to make two passes to cut all of the way down to the template.

After routing, clean up the long curves with a spokeshave and sand the tight ones by hand. Use a scraper and fine sandpaper to finish the job.

Shape the posts—The posts were roughed out before being mortised, but they may need to be trimmed closer to the pattern line with a bandsaw. Clean up the saw marks with a spokeshave or hand-plane. A No. 3 bench plane or even the longer No. 5 works well on this gradual curve. Use a hand scraper to remove any tearout or plane marks. Cut the curved top of each post on the bandsaw and finish up with a spokeshave and sandpaper.

Pegs and splines add detail

Small ebony details add flavor to this large-scale mahogany piece. Some of the joints are pinned, and there are short splines in the tops of the posts.

Drill for the square plugs—I pin joints in two steps. I use a thin dowel to actually pin the joint, and a separate square plug that goes in afterward. If you drill for the square plugs while the parts are still separate, you can use the drill press instead of an unsteady handheld drill.

A $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. brad point set to drill $\frac{1}{4}$ in. deep is perfect. Set up a fence on the drill press and drill for all of the plugs required. You can square up these holes now with a $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. chisel, but you must wait until the joints are glued up to drill through the tenons, drive in the pins and add the plugs.

I mill the ebony plug stock in long sections. First, square two edges of a stick on the jointer, using a long push stick. Then rough out the other edges on the bandsaw. Using a thinner push stick on the tablesaw, cut the stick oversized about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. Plugs made from this stick will fill up any imperfections in your chisel work.

Add the spline inlay—The inlay grooves in the posts go in after the tops of the posts

have been shaped. Use a ¼-in. bit in the router table, and set up a fence with a stop to index each cut. Square the end of each groove with a chisel.

Mill the inlay stock in long sections, the same way you did the plug stock. When trimming these sticks to size on the table-saw, leave the thickness oversized by a hair, so a pass or two with a handplane will fit the splines to their grooves.

Before putting in the post inlay, break the edge around the top of the post with a spokeshave. Make sure the inlay stock fits all of the way down into and to the end of the groove. After the glue has dried, trim down the inlay a bit with a block plane, bevel the edges a little with a chisel and then dome the splines with sandpaper.

Assemble from the inside out

Before assembling any parts, make sure they all fit together perfectly without any extra-heavy clamping pressure. Run through the glue-up dry so that you know where all of your tools, clamps and parts are. No surprises in a glue-up is a nice surprise. Glue the center rails to the columns first. While the glue is drying, put the columns into the rails to check that the center rails have gone in straight.

Glue in the columns to the rails next. But do another dry run first and thank yourself later on. Put more glue into the mortises—especially at the mouth of each joint—than on the tenons. Glue on the tenons tends to get scraped off. When the clamps are in place, use winding sticks to check that the long rails are not twisted. Also before the glue sets up, put the posts onto the rails dry and check across the diagonals to see that the frame is going together square.

Finally, glue the posts to the long rails. Glue the floating tenons into the rails first, one at a time. There's no pressure or rushing this way. Plus you can check if the tenons are going in straight and to full depth. Then glue the posts to the rails. Have long clamps ready to pull everything together. Also have an even longer clamp ready if you need to clamp across the diagonals. Once the clamps are on, check again to see that the frame is sitting flat.

Finish pegging the joints

I use ¾-in.-dia. dowels to pin the joints. Drill into the bottom of the square holes you made earlier, through the tenon and into the opposite side of the mortise. Mark



Pin the joints in two steps

Use a dowel to pin the joint, with a square ebony peg on top. Before assembly, drill a shallow hole for the peg using the drill press. After glue-up, square the hole, then drill into the bottom of that hole and through the tenon to receive the dowel.



Leave the peg slightly proud and break the edges. Use a piece of laminate under the chisel to protect the surrounding wood. Finish with sandpaper to gently dome the peg.

the bit with a piece of masking tape to set the depth. Cut the dowel to the proper length and chamfer the ends with sandpaper. Put a spot of glue in the hole and drive in the pin until it is level with the bottom of the square hole. Use a steel pin to drive the wood pin home.

Chamfer the tip of the square stock with a chisel and cut off an oversized plug. Use a toothpick to spread some glue in the hole and pound the plug straight in with a metal hammer. When the sound of the hammering changes from a thud to a ping, you'll know the plug is home.

Now saw off the plugs to about ¼ in. proud. Plane them lightly with a block plane to remove the saw marks. To form a shallow dome on each one, first carve away the edges of the plug with a chisel. Use a piece of laminate to protect the surface of the surrounding wood. Work from all four sides of the plug evenly toward the middle, then sand it to a gentle curve.

Now the piece is ready for finishing. I used a wiping varnish called

ProFin on this bed. Once you've attached the ledger strips to the side rails, assembled the bed, inserted the slats and put on your bedding of choice, you've made your bed—and you'll want to lie in it. □

Gary Rogowski is a contributing editor. He runs the Northwest Woodworking Studio, a woodworking school in Portland, Ore.

To take this Arts and Crafts bed to the next level, add a traditional silver inlay to the center columns, as described in this issue's Master Class (see p. 100).

Sharpening Hollow-Mortising Chisels and Bits

Mortisers cut best when the chisels and bits have been properly sharpened

BY BRIAN GRAHAM

Hollow-mortising chisel

How mortisers cut square holes

A drill bit spinning inside a hollow-mortising chisel bores a round hole, then the chisel—following just behind the business end of the bit—cuts the four corners.

Drill bit

The mortiser is a machine designed for one purpose: cutting mortises quickly and accurately. Remarkably, it does that by cutting a square hole. Yet there's no magic at work here, just some clever engineering.

But mortisers can be finicky machines. In particular, if the cutting edges aren't sharp, this machine can give you plenty of grief. The bit squeals, the chisel cooks, and the wood chips smoke. It is not a pretty sight.

So you need to keep those edges sharp. If done regularly, it takes just a few minutes, and the techniques are pretty simple.

In the family tree of tools, the mortiser, or mortising machine as it's sometimes called, is most closely related to the drill press. The mortiser uses an induction motor to spin a drill bit. And, with the aid of a lever arm, the motor can be moved up or down to feed the bit in or out of a workpiece.

Of course, a round drill bit can't create a square hole. It takes a second tool to help get the job done: a hollow-mortising chisel, which has four sides with a lengthwise hole down the middle. With the drill bit inside the hole, the chisel and bit work in tandem. As the spinning drill bit cuts the hole, removing most of the wood, the fixed chisel travels with it, trimming the round hole square in the process.

Mortisers can accept several sizes of chisels and bits, including $\frac{1}{4}$ in., $\frac{5}{16}$ in., $\frac{3}{8}$ in., $\frac{1}{2}$ in., $\frac{9}{16}$ in., $\frac{3}{4}$ in. and 1 in., with the size dictating the dimensions of the square hole. Keep in mind, though, that some machines don't accept every size chisel and bit.

You won't need a ton of tools to keep



all of the cutting edges sharp. I use a chisel reamer (see the photos below), four sharpening stones and some honing oil. The stones include a fine-grit flat stone, two round, fine-grit tapered stones (large and small) and an auger-bit stone (see Sources of Supply at right). By the way, before using a stone, be sure it gets a few drops of the honing oil.

Mortising chisel is a good place to start

The cutting end of a mortising chisel has four points, one at each corner. The points are created at the factory when the center hole of the leading end of the chisel is machined into a taper. The sharpening process begins with this taper.

Start by clamping the chisel in a vise at about a 45° angle. Then select one of the round, tapered stones. Use the small one for ¼-in. through ¾-in. chisels, and the large one for ½-in. through 1-in. sizes.

Place the stone on the bevel of the chisel. You'll want the stone in contact along the full length of the bevel. Then start working the stone back and forth while slowly rotating it in your fingers.

The idea is to create a slight burr on the inside edge of the bevel. To check for the burr on the inside edge, simply run your finger lightly along the edge. By the way, to avoid creating grooves in the bevel, don't stay in one place for more than a few strokes.

All told, for a chisel that's moderately dull, it shouldn't take more than five minutes to get a nice burr all around the bevel. It will take a little longer if you have the additional task of removing grinding marks.

Now it's time to make the burr disappear. Place one side of the chisel on the flat stone, then pull the chisel toward you. After each pull, check the status of the burr with your finger. It might take a few pulls to eliminate the burr.

Use caution: You want the sides of the chisel to remain square to one another, so be sure to keep each side flat on the stone. Also, for the chisel to stay square, you need to make sure the same amount of steel gets removed from each side. That's easy to do simply by using the same number of pull strokes on each side of the chisel. Honing the outside edge will create a slight burr on the inside edge of the chisel.

To remove the burr on the inside of the bevel, slip the round, tapered stone into



Sharpen the chisel bevel. To hone the beveled surfaces, use a fine-grit, round, tapered stone, rotating the stone as you work.



Remove the bevel burr. Use a fine-grit flat stone to remove the burr on all four sides of the chisel.

A SHARP CHISEL CUTS CLEANLY

To cut properly and without effort, the hollow-mortising chisel needs to be as sharp as possible. The honing process takes just a few minutes.



SOURCES OF SUPPLY

SKARIE INC. (410) 728-6000
Sharpening stones, honing oil, reamer

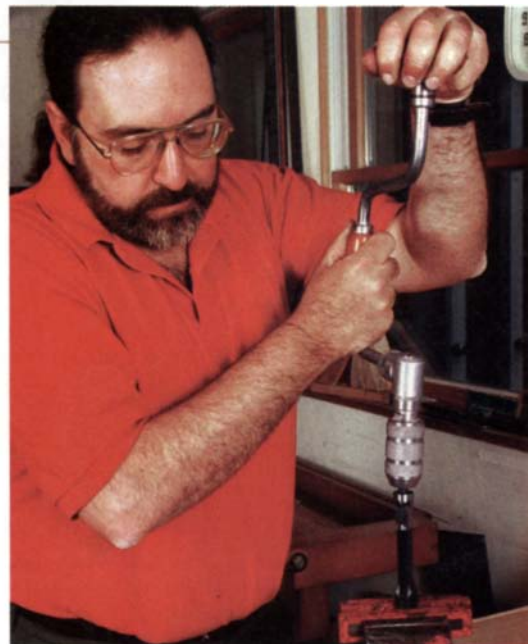
GARRETT WADE (800) 221-2942
Flat sharpening stone, reamer

If honing isn't enough

A reaming tool (below) mounted in a brace (right) quickly rejuvenates a bevel that has been sharpened out of round or nicked from a drop on a hard floor.

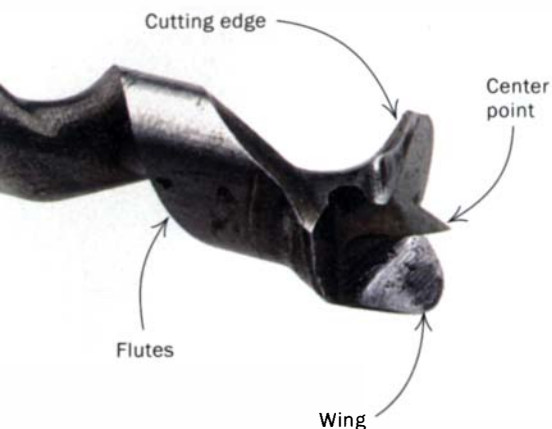


Interchangeable pilots. The reamer comes with an assortment of pilots to fit various sizes of chisels.



A SHARP BIT IS A MUST

Mortisers don't like dull bits. Fortunately, it's no big hassle to sharpen a bit. All that's needed is a couple of stones and five minutes of honing time.



Start with the wing. A few short strokes with a fine-grit auger-bit stone sharpens the wing of the bit.



Get to the point. Most bits also have a three-sided point that needs honing with the stone.



On the edge. When sharpening the cutting edge, pull the stone in one direction, working from the leading edge to the trailing edge.



Hone the tip. Rotate the tip of the bit clockwise on the flat stone to hone the outside surfaces. Use a light touch here.

the center hole, then pull out the stone while slowly rotating it in your fingers. Try to avoid angling the stone as you work your way around the hole.

When the edge is nicked, use a reamer—The round, tapered stone is great for light to moderate touch-up work on the chisel. Occasionally, though, the bevel is going to need some extra work. That can happen after a bevel has been honed so many times that it ends up out of round or after a chisel gets dropped.

When the bevel needs a major tune-up, I use a hollow-chisel reamer (also called a chisel-sharpening tool). This gadget looks much like a countersink bit with a pilot added to the tip. When used with a hand brace, the reamer quickly shaves away steel, so in no time you can correct an out-of-round bevel or repair a broken tip.

The reamer is sold with several pilots of different diameters. Use a pilot that most closely fits the inside diameter of the chisel so that the countersink stays centered on the bevel. Another point: The bevel angle on these chisels isn't standardized, so before buying a reamer, check with your supplier to make sure it's suitable.

To use the tool, first mount it into a hand brace and then clamp the chisel in a vise. Slip the pilot of the reamer into the hole in the chisel. Now, slowly crank the brace, making sure the reamer stays in line with the chisel. The reamer usually leaves heavy burrs. So you'll need to use the round, tapered stone to clean them up.

Bit is sharpened in a few areas

Now that the chisel has been honed, you're ready to sharpen the bit. And for that you'll



Hone the flutes. The flutes of the bit can be smoothed by rotating the bit counterclockwise on a flat stone.

work with the auger-bit stone and then finish up with the flat stone.

The wing—Start by clamping the bit in a vise. Then hold the long, thin, tapered end of the auger-bit stone flat against the wing of the bit. Work the stone in short strokes across the wing, using care to avoid bumping into the center point of the bit.

The center point—The center point of the bit is next. Keep in mind, though, that some bits don't have a center point. Skip this step if your bit is pointless.

The center point is shaped like a three-sided pyramid. And all three sides need sharpening. The tapered end of the auger-bit stone is used here. Place the stone flat against one side of the point, then use a short, light stroke to push it across the surface. Avoid being heavy handed; you don't want to change the shape of the point. And be sure to remove the same amount of material from each side.

The cutting edge—Once the center point of the bit has been sharpened, you're ready to move on and hone the cutting edge.

Use a wide part of the auger-bit stone, and place it flat on the cutting edge. Then pull the stone in only one direction, so that it moves from the leading edge to the trailing edge. That way, as you smooth out the grinding marks left by the factory, you're also removing any burrs that form as you work the stone.

The outside—The work on the bit is almost finished. All that's required now is a little honing on the flutes. But because the tip of the bit, at the cutting edges, has a bigger diameter than the rest of the tool, it takes a couple of steps to get the job done.

I usually hone the tip of the bit first. With the bit parallel to the stone and the tip of the bit lightly touching it, it's just a matter of turning the bit clockwise (when looking at the tip).

To hone the remainder of the bit, place it on the flat stone with the cutting edge overhanging a little. Then turn the bit in a counterclockwise direction to smooth out any rough surfaces. □

Brian Graham lives in Baltimore, Md.



One thin dime. To set the clearance between the end of chisel and bit, simply slip a dime between the shoulder of the chisel and the mortiser chuck. Then tighten.



Raise the bit until it's flush with the chisel points. Use a block of wood to support the tip of the bit. Then tighten.



Readjust the chuck. Loosen the chisel and push it up until the shoulder butts against the chuck, then tighten.

Bit setup and cutting tips

A well-sharpened hollow-mortising chisel and bit can go a long way toward taming an unruly mortiser. But sharpness isn't necessarily a panacea here. A few other things need to get done just right.

For example, if the chisel and bit are to work together effectively, there needs to be clearance between the oversized tip of the bit and the bevel of the chisel. You don't need a lot— $\frac{3}{32}$ in. to $\frac{1}{8}$ in., or the thickness of a dime. Without clearance, the tip of the

bit will rub against the bevel. When that happens, you end up getting assaulted with a high-pitched squeal that can make your teeth hurt. And, if that weren't enough, the friction that results heats the bit and gets the wood chips smoking.

I also find it important to lubricate the surfaces of the chisel and bit. A dry-film spray lubricant works well for me, and it's harmless to a finish. I spray the parts just before turning on the machine, then I respray them as needed if things start getting noisy or if the mortise begins to send up smoke signals.

It's also helpful to have the slotted side of the chisel facing in the direction of open space. For example, if you're working from left to right as you cut a mortise, the slotted side should face to the left. That way, the chips can eject into the cut portion of the mortise. If chips can't escape, they end up getting packed into the chisel. And that makes everything run hotter.

One more point. Rather than drive the chisel and bit the full depth of the mortise in one single stroke, it's usually better to make several short cuts. The upward travel of the cutters between strokes allows chips to clear, helping the cutters to run cooler.



Six Ways to Edge Plywood

The choices vary in their complexity
and durability and the time
they take to execute

BY MARIO RODRIGUEZ

To the world of woodworking, the innovation of plywood ranks right up there with the invention of the tablesaw. It's hard to imagine building some furniture and cabinetry without it. Plywood gives you the relative stability and flatness of a 4x8 panel, combined with the beauty of select veneers. You also get a variety of thicknesses, from $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. on stock items and up to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. on special orders—and you get all of this at a reasonable price. The challenge when using plywood is, of course, what to do about that ugly laminated edge. The goal is to create an edge treatment that looks like a continuation of the veneered surface without an obvious seam. You can achieve that goal with a simple layer of veneer or a more complex edge treatment that requires sophisticated joinery techniques.

The decision about how to treat a plywood edge can be influenced by a number of factors—esthetic and design considerations (how do you want it to look?), function and durability (what kind of wear and tear will this edge face?), time and labor (how much of either do you want to spend?). The choice should depend on the planned use of the furniture piece or cabinet component. For example, a thick, solid edge would be appropriate for the exposed edge of a cabinet carcass. But for shelves contained and protected within a cabinet, an iron-on veneer edge would probably be sufficient. What follows is a look at the choices, from the easiest to apply but least durable to the more complicated versions that take longer but offer more protection. □

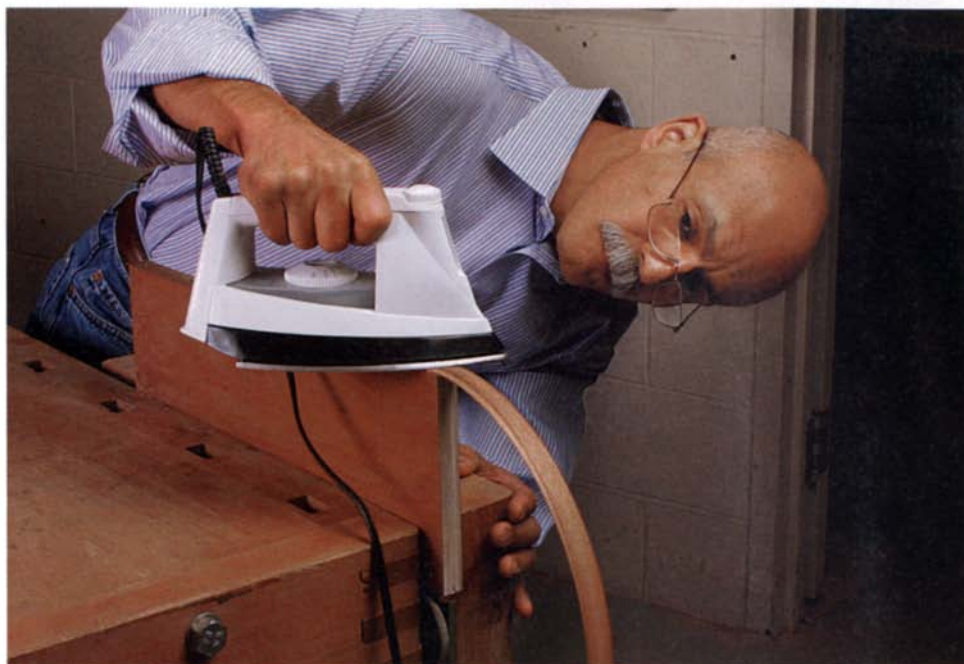
Mario Rodriguez is a contributing editor.

IRON-ON VENEER IS EASY TO APPLY

This material, also called edge tape or edge-banding, commonly measures $\frac{1}{8}$ in. wide for use with $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick plywood. It is sold in rolls from 8 ft. to 250 ft. long, and it is available in a number of different woods. Birch, cherry, mahogany, red oak and walnut are fairly easy to find, but you can also buy it in ash, maple, pine, white oak, teak and just about any other species of hardwood plywood that is made. Because it's so thin, edge-banding isn't suitable for furniture components that will be subject to heavy use. But once the heat-sensitive glue has melted and cooled and the edge-banding has been trimmed, the seams are virtually invisible. Just remember that heat causes the glue to release, so don't choose edge-banding for pieces that will be exposed to heat.

A standard household iron is the tool of choice for most people who use edge-banding. Set the iron to a medium heat level. While it's warming up, you can cut lengths of banding to size, allowing a little overhang on both ends. Move the iron slowly back and forth, applying a steady pressure until the heat-sensitive glue melts and bonds the edge-banding to the plywood. Some people burnish the banding with a scrap of wood, but I haven't found that technique necessary to get a good bond.

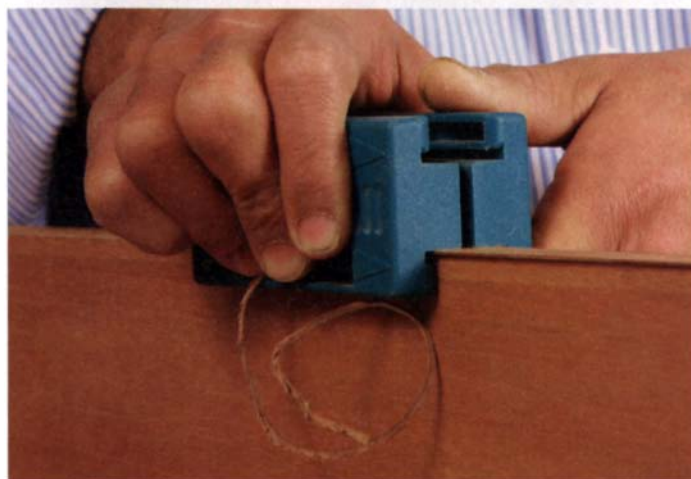
The glue needs to cool before you can trim the banding; otherwise, you end up with a gooey mess. You can trim the edge-banding overhang with a razor blade, a veneer saw, a file or a specialty tool designed for the job (see the photos at right).



Ironing is simple and straightforward. A regular household iron set on medium heat is all you need to melt the heat-activated glue on the back of manufactured edge-banding. The material is available in just about any hardwood veneer that is also used to make plywood.



Plywood guides the cut. Rodriguez uses a sharp veneer saw to trim edge-banding on small workpieces that he can easily hold with one hand. To direct the cut he keeps the bottom of the saw flat against the plywood.



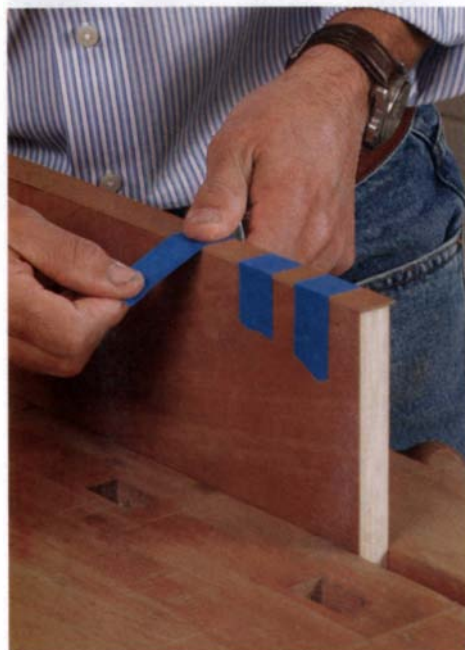
The right tool for the job. For trimming large quantities of edge-banding, invest in a spring-loaded edge trimmer designed for this task. The one shown here is made by Virutex and sells for about \$10.

SOLID EDGING

With solid edging you get a thicker edge than you do with Iron-on edge-banding, and it requires only a little more work. For $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick plywood, begin by jointing a straight, square edge on a $\frac{7}{8}$ -in.-thick thick piece of solid lumber, then rip as many $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-thick strips of lumber as you'll need.

I use a sharp 40-tooth rip blade, but a good alternate top bevel (ATB) blade can also do the job. Be sure to back up the cuts with a sturdy push stick to prevent the thin strips trapped between the spinning blade and the fence from shooting back at you. Before ripping each $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-thick strip, joint the edge of the lumber. Place the jointed edge against the plywood edge when you glue it up.

After applying a swath of glue to the plywood edge, use a good-quality masking tape to clamp the edging strips in place. Inspect each edge after you tape it. A tight seam with a little bit of glue squeeze-out along the length of the joint indicates a good job. After the glue has dried, trim down the overhang with a block plane and a cabinet scraper.



Masking tape makes a good clamp. Numerous short pieces of masking tape provide plenty of pressure for gluing wood edging.



Tools for trimming. Use a block plane to trim most of the excess edging flush to the plywood surface (left). Angle the sole of the plane to achieve a cleaner cut. A cabinet scraper finishes the job (above).

This method offers a couple of important benefits. The V shape has an extremely low profile at the seam, making it nearly invisible; and the increased thickness toward the center offers more durability than you get with edge-banding (p. 57) or even the $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-thick treatment (left).

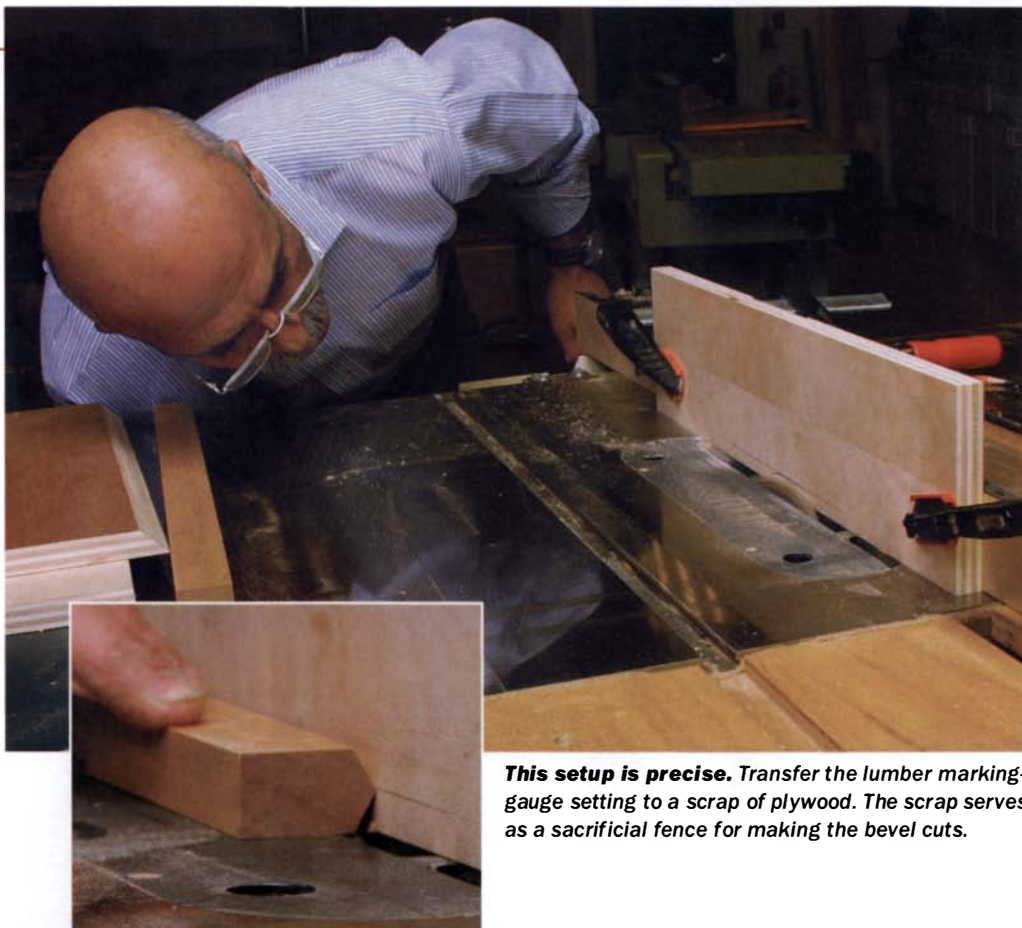
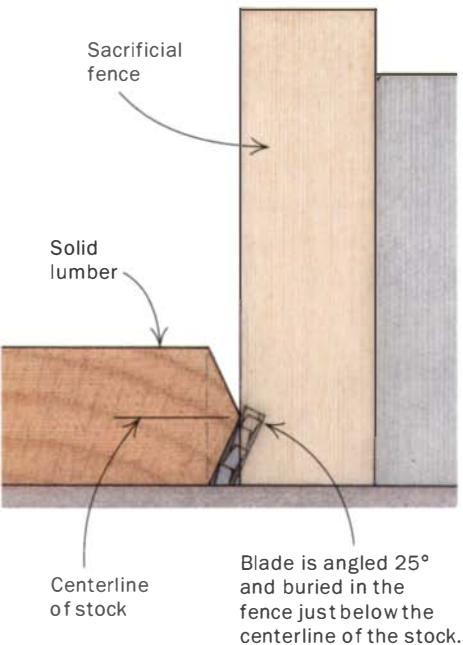
Shape the solid-wood edging first, using a board wider than you need, which makes the process easier and safer. First mark the exact center of the edging material with a marking gauge, then transfer that mark to the bottom edge of a sacrificial plywood fence. Set the tablesaw blade to an angle of 25° , and set up the fence so that the spinning sawblade advances into the sacrificial fence just below the scribed line. Once this setup is ready, you can shape as many edgings as you need, beveling the top and bottom of each piece of lumber by flipping and turning each board around and passing it against the sawblade.

To cut the V shape into the edges of the plywood, leave the blade set at 25° and shift the fence to the other side of the blade. As with any finicky setup, it's best to have some scraps on hand to make adjustments as needed until the cut is aligned. When all of the angled cuts have been made, return the blade to 90° and rip the final pieces of V-molding from all of the lumber that you shaped. You can use masking tape to hold the V-molding in place when you glue it up. Once the glue sets, trim the edges with a block plane and a cabinet scraper.

V-SHAPED EDGING IS DURABLE AND PRACTICALLY SEAMLESS

CUTTING THE BEVELS

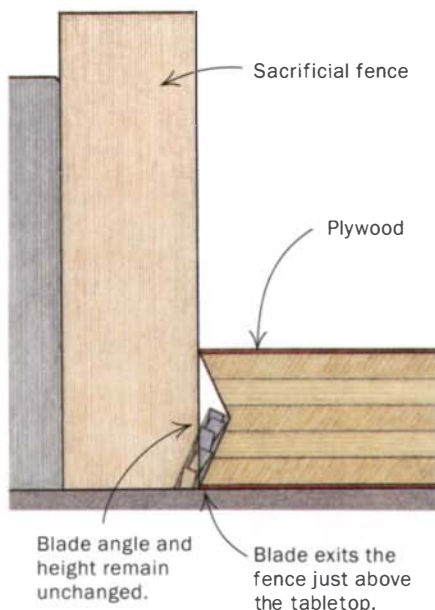
Use a $\frac{7}{8}$ -in.-thick piece of lumber to make a V-shaped edging for $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick plywood.



This setup is precise. Transfer the lumber marking-gauge setting to a scrap of plywood. The scrap serves as a sacrificial fence for making the bevel cuts.

SHAPING THE PLYWOOD

Move the fence to the other side of the blade to set up the cuts for the V-shape into the edge of the plywood.



A nearly invisible seam at the edge. This alternative edging offers the advantage of showing very little wood at the edge where veneer meets lumber, unlike the effect you get with tongue-and-groove edges (see pp. 60-61).

THREE TONGUE-AND-GROOVE EDGE TREATMENTS



The three common versions of a tongue-and-groove lumber edge for plywood offer the most protection for a plywood edge. A significant advantage of adding a substantial piece of lumber to the edge of plywood is that you can shape that edge in any number of decorative configurations, such as a bullnose, an ogee or a bevel.

But these edge treatments have a couple of drawbacks. They are time-consuming to carry out, and each of them produces a visibly discernible seam.

You can go about cutting these joints a couple of different ways. You can buy a matched set of router bits to make the required cuts, or you can make all of the necessary cuts on a tablesaw using either a combination blade or a stacked dado set, or both. There's not a lot of room for mis-

takes when you're setting up these cuts—you must be precise.

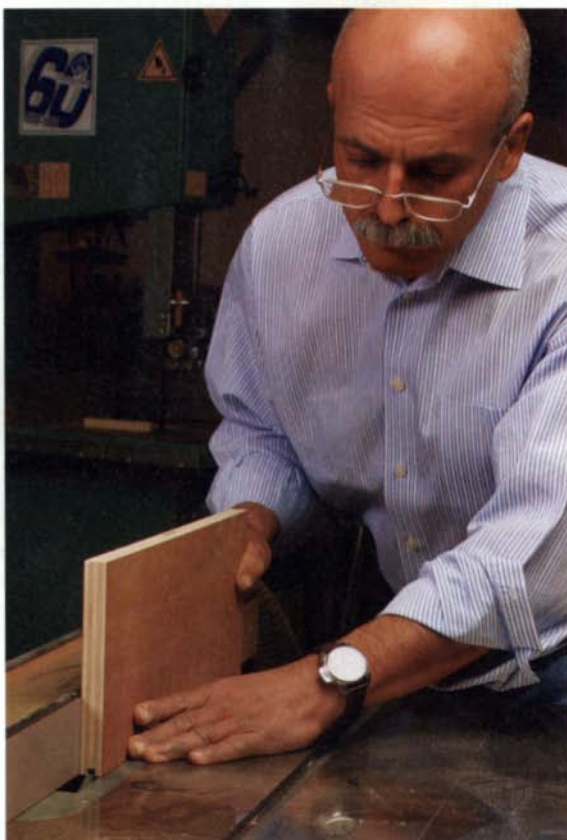
I usually begin by plowing the grooves first, using a stacked dado set. Naturally, you must be prepared to make allowances for plywood that is not a full $\frac{3}{4}$ in. thick, because it rarely is. Plowing the groove from both sides guarantees that it will be perfectly centered, regardless of the actual thickness. After plowing the grooves, clamp a plywood scrap to the fence and reposition it to cut the tongues to fit. I prefer to make the shoulder cuts first, using a combination blade for a clean cut. When gluing up any of the three versions shown here, a clamped, slightly concave batten will give you tighter seams, distribute the pressure more evenly across the span of the edge and will require fewer clamps.



1. GROOVED PANEL

This version provides the most solid wood at the center, for shaping the edge later.

Two options for plowing grooves. A stacked dado set or a straight-toothed rip blade each works well at cutting grooves into the edges of either plywood or solid lumber.



Shaping lumber tongues on the tablesaw. Make the shoulder cuts first, with the edge stock flat on the tablesaw. Then turn the stock to a vertical position and run it through the blade again to cut the tongue to size.



Start with lumber larger than needed. When cutting joints in lumber edge stock, use wider boards and rip the edging down to width later, after shaping all of the joints.



2. GROOVED LUMBER

This method is a little simpler to make but might limit the shapes you can mill into the edge.

Same process, but the materials are reversed. A grooved lumber edge fitting over a plywood tongue is set up and cut just like its mirror-image cousin (facing page).



Cut the shoulders carefully. The quality of the joint where the plywood veneer meets the lumber edge is defined by how well the two materials come together. Maintain an even, steady cut for the best results.



3. PLYWOOD SPLINE

A separate spline serves as the tongue to join plywood to lumber.

Matching grooves. This is the easiest and fastest of the three tongue-and-groove edge treatments to set up and cut. It reduces the joint-making time by half. Properly glued in place, the 1/4-in.-thick plywood spline is plenty strong.



Concave batten aids clamping



A concave batten minimizes the number of clamps. A scrap of wood with a slight bow in it (above) requires fewer clamps to get even pressure along an edge being glued up. A block plane (left) makes quick work of leveling the solid wood.

Backsaw Workshop

With the right technique, handsaws are often a better choice than machines

BY PHILIP C. LOWE

My shop is fully equipped with every power tool I need. I don't hesitate to use a power tool to save time. But there are occasions when using a handsaw is more efficient and faster. Handsaws often frustrate woodworkers who cannot get them to perform well. After 35 years cutting with handsaws, I've found that it's as important to use the right technique as well as the right

saw to get good results. I prefer Western-style saws, which cut on the push stroke, over Japanese saws, which cut on the pull stroke. Western saws usually come with a pistol grip, and I prefer them for two reasons: I was trained on them and I've never met a task they couldn't handle easily.

I have three backsaws: one for dovetails and two for tenons. The blade on my dovetail saw is about 2 in. wide by 10 in. long, with 15 tpi, and is sharpened for rip cuts because dovetails are cut with or along the grain. The set of the teeth is minimal, so the kerf is not too wide.

As for my tenon saws, one is

sharpened for rip cuts (the cheeks of a tenon), and the other for crosscuts (across the grain at the shoulders). Each saw has a 15-tpi blade that's 3 in. wide and 14 in. long. The wider blade allows for cutting tenons of substantial length.

Though I depend on all three saws, if I had to buy only one, it would be a dovetail saw. Its blade is wide enough to cut most tenons, and the teeth are so fine that it will cut cross-grain well enough.

Begin with a proper grip and stance

The manner in which you grip the saw is critical. When hold-

TENON SAW

Crosscut or rip teeth

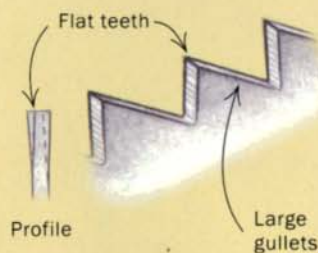
DOVETAIL SAW

Rip teeth

TYPES OF BACKSAWS

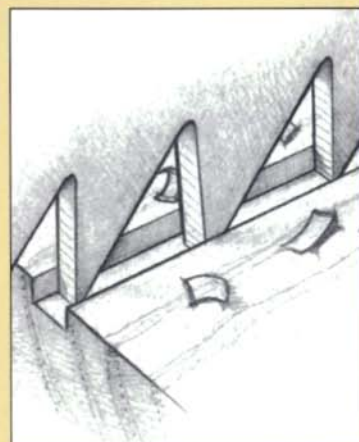
The "back" in backsaw refers to the reinforcing strip along the saw's spine. But backsaws vary in shape and size and come with different tooth patterns. Dovetail saws are smaller and are sharpened for rip cuts. Larger tenon saws come with tooth patterns for either ripping or crosscutting. If you decide to buy only one tenon saw, choose one with crosscut teeth.

COMPARISON OF SAWTOOTH PROFILES



RIPSAW TEETH

The flat-top teeth act as chisels and are designed to cut with the grain. They are spaced farther apart (from 12 tpi to 20 tpi), and the gullets are deeper to clear out sawdust as you cut.



ing a pistol-grip saw, keep your wrist straight and point your index finger toward the blade. This keeps the saw from twisting in your hand and directs the cut. Don't choke the handle; rather, hold it as if you were holding a bird and didn't want it to get away.

Stance is also key to achieving an even, smooth action for cutting. When addressing your work, your arm and shoulder should be aligned with the cut. If you crowd the work, your elbow is forced away from your body to avoid hitting your side. You then make a sideward movement and your hand travels in an arc. If you are standing in the correct position, your shoulder, elbow and wrist are in a straight line and all pivot from the shoulder. Your feet should be positioned so that the one that is opposite your cutting arm is forward and the other behind. This allows for your back foot and arm to take any resistance that is exerted from the saw and prevents you from being knocked off balance.

Keep your eyes on the cut line during the whole cut to ensure that the kerf doesn't stray from the line. For dovetail cuts, look at the top line across the width of the board and the line down the face of the board to

make sure you're cutting in a straight line.

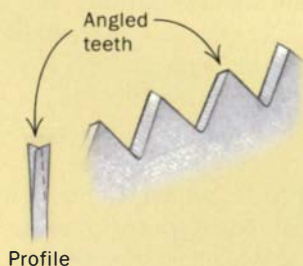
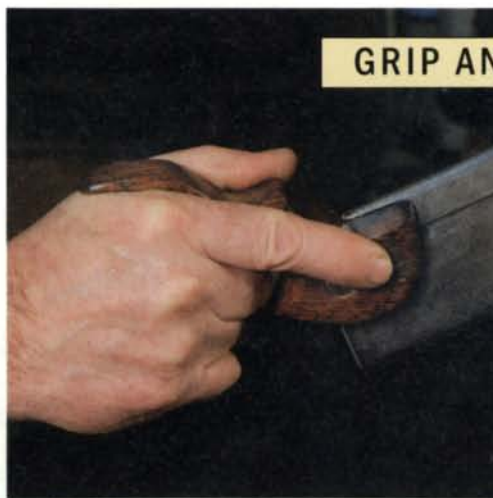
Rips and crosscuts require different techniques

The method for beginning a cut with a backsaw depends on whether you're ripping or crosscutting. When making a rip cut for a tenon or a dovetail, place your thumbnail on the pencil or scribe mark and rest the saw against your nail. Push the saw forward with a light stroke, then follow the line as best as possible. When crosscutting, align your index, middle and ring fingers along the scribe line. When using a crosscut tenon saw, start the cut with a light push stroke. Slight pressure against your fingers prevents the saw from drifting into the scribe line.

Remember that these saws cut only on the push stroke. Some people try to start a cut by making a small kerf with a pull, or draw, stroke of the saw. But if pressure is exerted on the pull stroke, you will experience excessive vibration, often even more apparent with a coarse-toothed blade. If starting the cut on the push stroke is difficult, it's probably time to get your saw sharpened. I've found that even a new saw needs to be sharpened before it can be

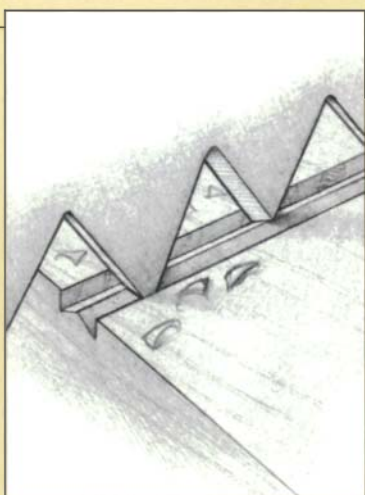
GRIP AND STANCE

Point your index finger toward the workpiece (left) to keep the saw straight. Keep your knees bent and your arm low and angled up toward the workpiece (below).

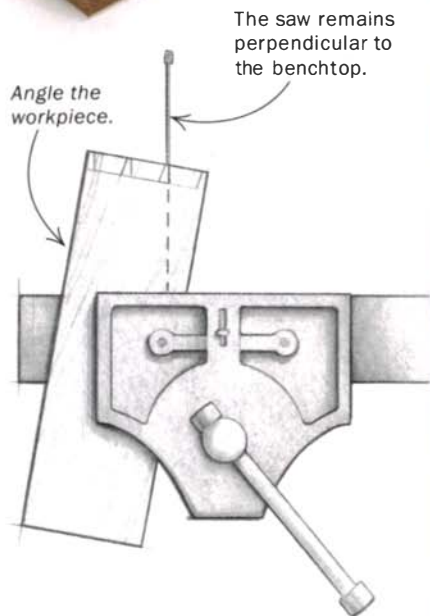
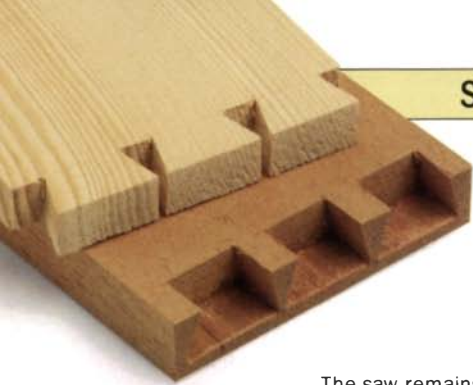


CROSSCUT TEETH

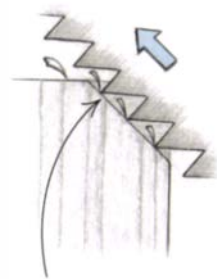
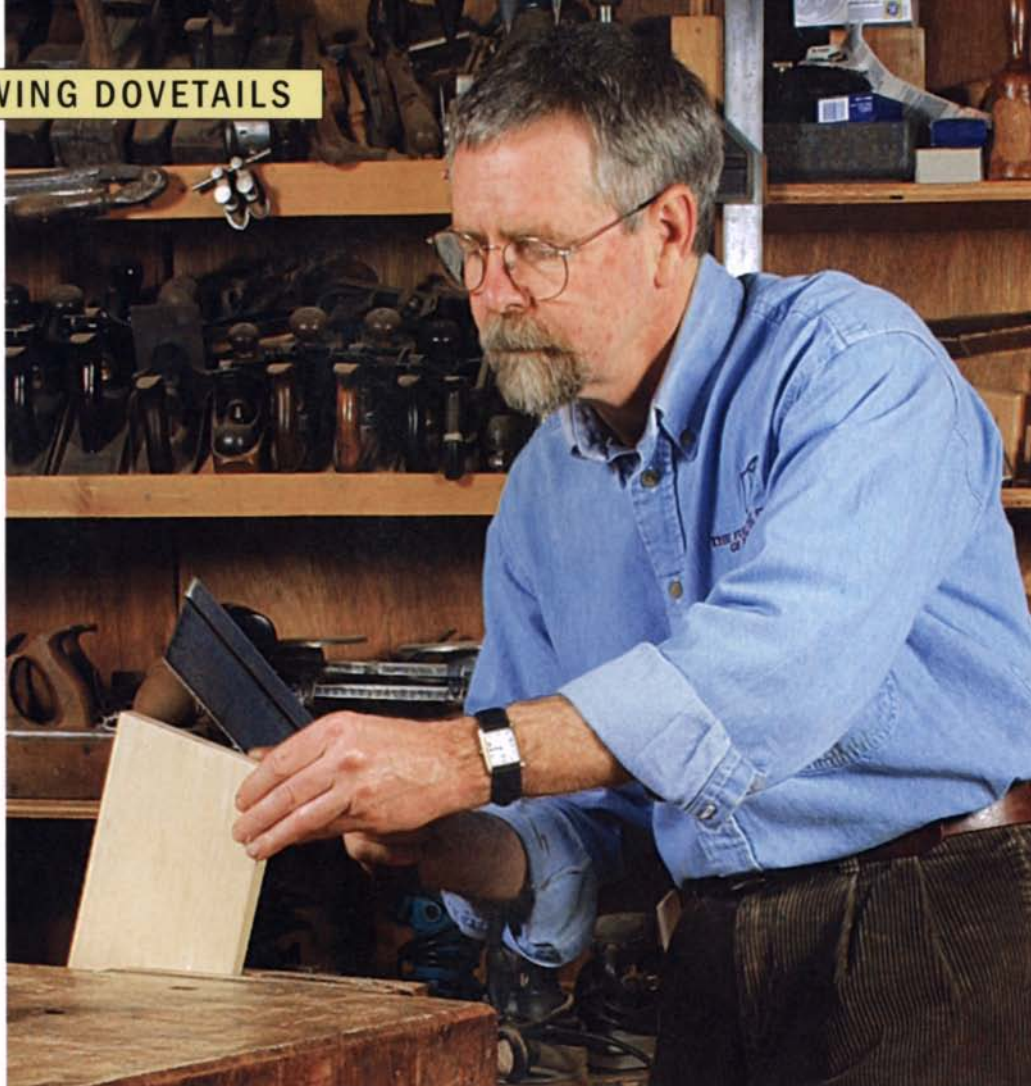
The angled teeth score the cross-grain fibers as they cut. The teeth are smaller, with 12 tpi to 20 tpi, and cut slower than rip saw teeth.



SAWING DOVETAILS



Angle the work, not the saw, when cutting tails. It's easier to cut a straight line if you're cutting perpendicular to the bench.



An upward cut slices cleanly through the long grain.

Hold the work vertically when cutting pins. Use your thumb-nail as a guide and begin the cut on the push stroke.



used. You can sharpen the blade yourself (for more on sharpening handsaws, see *FWW* #121, pp. 92-95, and #125, pp. 44-47), but it may be worthwhile to find a local shop that will sharpen the saw to your specifications. Also, Woodcraft (800-535-4482) offers a sharpening service.

A slow, smooth, even stroke with constant pressure is what you are after. On the push stroke, be sure to use the full length of the blade and avoid short strokes. On the pull stroke, ease the pressure to prevent vibration. When cutting tenons or dovetails, start your cuts at the corner of the board and follow the line down and across the top until you reach the scribe lines or the opposite side of the piece. At this point, if you are cutting a tenon, contin-

ue by following the kerf down the back line. It is only necessary to watch the opposite side if you are approaching a scribe line that you don't want to cut beyond. But in most cases you ought to make the shoulder cuts first.

Workpiece position should simplify cutting

When cutting dovetails, hold your work vertically in a vise. When cutting the tails, I like to tip the board so that the angle is vertical and the saw does not have to be tipped. I think it's easier to teach your body to cut a straight line that is perpendicular to your bench than to cut at an angle.

Clamp tenon stock in a vise so that you cut from the front of the vise. Ideally, the part should be positioned so that the rip

**Watch it
on the web**

For more on using a backsaw,
go to www.finewoodworking.com.

SAWING TENONS



Crosscut the shoulders. Use a bench hook to hold the work. Using your fingertips to guide the saw (inset), start on the push stroke at a very slight angle and then level out to complete the cut.

cuts proceed vertically. This is not always possible when cutting tenons that have compound angles. When cross-cutting shoulders on tenons, hold the part in a vise or with a bench hook.

Most cutting problems have simple solutions

If you are having trouble making straight, clean cuts, there are a few things to look out for. If your saw binds, check the blade. New saws have lacquer on the sides of the blade that can soften from friction and make the saw grab. Remove the lacquer with lacquer thinner and apply a coat of paste wax to the metal sides. Rust can also cause binding. Remove it with silicon-carbide sandpaper and apply paste wax.

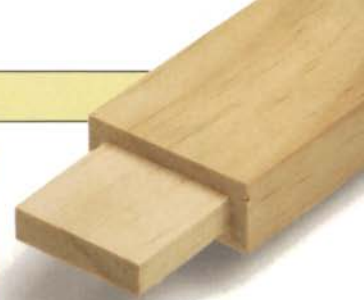
Next, examine the set of the

saw. If it is too slight, the blade can't pass through the kerf freely. An uneven set to the teeth will cause the cut to wander. Dullness, obviously, is another reason. Teeth that are not jointed correctly, meaning the tips of the teeth are at different heights, will cause the saw to bounce and will not give a smooth cut. The obvious fix is to joint, reset the teeth and sharpen.

Finally, look at your technique for sawing. If you crowd the cut with your body, as explained before, your saw will be more difficult to control.

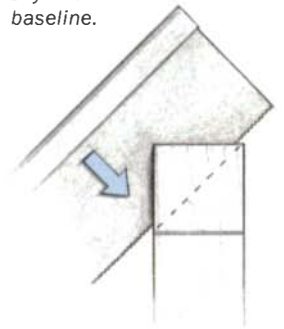
With proper setup and technique, and with a little practice, you will be able to control your saw and make accurate cuts. □

Philip C. Lowe is a furniture maker and teacher in Beverly, Mass.



Rip the cheeks. Use your fingernail to guide the saw and begin cutting at an acute angle to the workpiece.

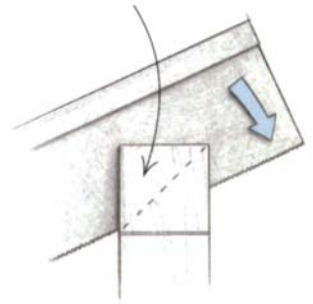
Cut at an angle until you're just shy of the baseline.



Follow both lines. Maintain the angle of the saw and sight down the scribe lines as you cut.



The kerf guides the saw through the remainder of the cut.



Finish the cut. Flatten out your stroke to be parallel with the floor and saw to the shoulder cut.

Ipé



Often marketed
as a teak substitute,
this strong wood is good
for more than decking

BY
JON ARNO



A few months ago, a customer came to our lumberyard in search of some decking. We stock only treated pine and western red cedar for this purpose, but he was emphatic about wanting something more wear resistant and durable. I gave him price quotes on teak and ipé. He wisely opted for ipé, and I had the material shipped directly to him from our supplier. It was a done deal until several days later when he returned with a board in hand. He wanted to know what kind of wood they'd mistakenly mixed in with his shipment of ipé. I assured him that the lustrous and beautifully figured, chocolate-brown sample he held was every bit as much an example of ipé as the olive-drab boards that made up the rest of the load. That greenish color seems to have given American woodworkers a bad case of tunnel vision when it comes to what ipé is and what it's good for. We may think it's good only for decking, but nothing could be further from the truth. The mystery is how a single wood could vary so much from sample to sample. The answer is steeped in botany and chemistry, and this wood deserves a closer look.

Ipé comes from more than one tree

The imported wood we refer to here in the United States as ipé is cut from more than a dozen species belonging to the genus *Tabebuia*. This genus belongs to the same botanical family as our native catalpa: Bignoniaceae, usually referred to as the Trumpet Creeper family because of its many and often attractive flowering vines. While the family is not a major player in the flora of temperate North America, it is well represented in the tropics, where *Tabebuia* is its most important timber-producing genus.

Although in the United States ipé has been sold primarily as decking material, these many *Tabebuia* species are among the most plentiful and useful of all the timbers within their native range. They're used for everything from heavy construction to fine furniture veneers. These woods are so varied in their texture, density and appearance that the lumber industry sorts them into somewhat loose categories based on the properties of the wood rather than by the species that produce them.

In terms of developing a positive image, ordinary ipé decking is the worst ambassador the *Tabebuia* genus could send abroad. But virtually all members of this genus, even many of the species that normally produce the sort of grayish-green ipé, have the potential to produce stunningly beautiful woods when growing conditions are just right. The keys to beauty in this case rest with both the wood's anatomy and its chemistry.

Ipé has a somewhat unusual wood anatomy for a tropical timber. In those climates within its native range where there is a pronounced dry season, the tree becomes what is called dry-season deciduous. In other words, it sheds its leaves on a roughly annual basis to conserve moisture. With many species of ipé, this seasonal event is actually spectacular because of the flowers that follow. But more germane to woodworking, this short dry-season dor-

A good choice for outdoor furniture. Ipé is perhaps more decay resistant than even teak, for which it has been sold as a substitute. The color from one board to another ranges from greenish hues to dark brown tones.

mancy has a positive impact on the appearance of the wood, producing rings somewhat akin to the annual rings in temperate hardwoods. The second key to ipé's potential beauty stems from its natural chemistry. Ipe contains a compound called lapachol, often seen as a yellowish powder in the vessel lines on the surface of the wood. Lapachol is a mixed blessing, but on the positive side it tends to react to alkaline solutions to produce reddish-brown pigments. As a result, when grown in alkaline soil, the tree can produce fabulously colorful heartwood—often a dark reddish brown enhanced with black, marblelike veining. Logs with exceptionally attractive heartwood are converted into premium veneers or sometimes sold at hefty prices under other names such as amapa, bethabara, cortex, pau d'Arco and poui, to name a few.

WHERE IT COMES FROM

Brazil accounts for the majority of ipé lumber on the international market, but timber-producing species belonging to the *Tabebuia* genus are found throughout Latin America and on many islands in the Caribbean. The trees, often among the largest in the forest, produce a multitude of beautiful, orchidlike flowers, ranging in color from yellow to coral pink.



are a bit of a mixed bag. Density is one of its assets in that the oven-dry specific gravity of the various species of ipé ranges between 0.85 and 0.97, making them comparable to the rosewoods in terms of weight and strength. This almost stonelike density surpasses that of teak and other popular decking species by such a wide margin that none of them can compete with ipé's resistance to wear.

Stability, on the other hand, is not ipé's strong suit. At first glance, ipé's shrinkage statistics fall somewhere between rather ordinary and very good. Its average volumetric shrinkage, green to oven-dry, of 13.2% is about the same as our native red oak, making it perhaps a tad high

but not excessive. Its tangential (T) shrinkage of 8% and radial (R) shrinkage of 6.6% yield a very low T/R ratio of only 1.21:1. This is even lower than genuine mahogany. While the 13.2% volumetric shrinkage isn't terribly high, with a wood as dense as ipé it is high enough to create some powerful drying stresses that can cause surface checks. These checks tend to be small and numerous rather than catastrophic, and though not particularly attractive, they seldom compromise the structural integrity of the wood.

From a conservationist point of view, there is a benefit in choosing ipé as a substitute for other, more endangered tropical woods, such as teak, lignum vitae and rosewood. The many species that provide ipé lumber are plentiful and tend to grow in almost pure stands—all factors that make logging, processing and replenishment more manageable and less damaging to the environment. □

Jon Arno often graces the pages of Fine Woodworking with his thorough and lively profiles of various woods.

Working with ipé

Because of its interlocked, swirling grain, ipé is prone to tearout when machined. To remove tearout, sand with 80 grit and 120 grit, dust, then switch to a card scraper. If you wish to handplane ipé, choose a high-angle (60°) plane, such as one made by H.N.T. Gordon.



Surface checks are not a problem. Drying stresses can cause hairline cracks on the surface and end grain of some ipé lumber, but these checks rarely cause structural troubles.





Learn to Turn Spindles

With only four tools,
you can turn cylinders,
tapers, beads and coves

BY ERNIE CONOVER



ROUGHING-OUT
GOUGE



SPINDLE GOUGE



V-PARTING TOOL



SKREW CHISEL

In many ways turning is the simplest branch of woodworking: All turning is a bead, a cove, a cylinder or a taper; if you can cut these four shapes, you can turn anything. Likewise, there is no need to begin with a rack full of tools: a roughing-out gouge, a spindle gouge, a V-parting tool and a skew chisel are sufficient for the novice.

Why is it, then, that the early enthusiasm of many beginners turns to frustration in the face of sustained difficulties? The answer can be summed up in two words—tool preparation. Few tools come from the factory with the correct grind, and none will be as sharp as it could be. I'll demonstrate how to put a correct grind on all of them and how to keep them sharp; then and only then can you start to make shavings.

Selecting and preparing your tools

I urge you to avoid sets of tools. They may or may not contain a good spindle gouge, they will likely have a skew chisel that is too narrow, and there will be too many scrapers. Buy high-speed steel (HSS) tools, which are only slightly more expensive than regular (high-carbon) steel tools and hold an edge longer; you cannot draw the temper during grinding, even if you overheat the tool.

Roughing-out gouge—I recommend a 1¼-in. gouge, but the ¾-in. version is a good, less-costly second choice. The roughing-out gouge can be ground with a blunt fingernail face, but I prefer it with a square face because it is easier to cut up to a shoulder. The

tool can be ground either with the handle resting in a pocket holder (see the top photo at right) or simply braced against your thigh.

Spindle gouge—A ½-in. spindle gouge will be your workhorse, so invest wisely. Check the shaft to make sure the steel is from a round bar rather than from a thin section of rolled steel. A spindle gouge operates best with a long fingernail grind but is usually delivered with a short blunt grind (see the photos at right). While it is possible to grind a fingernail by eye on a bench grinder, it is difficult to do. Oneway, Sorby and Tormek all make jigs to simplify this task. You can also find a shop-built jig on p. 97 of *The Lathe Book* (The Taunton Press, 2001) and at www.finewoodworking.com.

I tend to grind a very long fingernail, which I call a high-society grind, but other turners work successfully with a somewhat more blunt fingernail. Experiment to find what length suits your turning style, but always polish your fingernail to a razor-sharp edge. This can be done with slipstones, but with a buffing wheel it's far quicker and you are less likely to miss a section.

V-parting tool—Also called a cutoff tool, the V-parting tool is used for cutting off work in the lathe. It is also used with calipers to establish sizes for duplicate parts, to create shoulders next to a head and to make tenons. The tool works fine with a hollow grind (see the top photo, below right), and the best cross section is the diamond shape, which has much less friction during a cut than cheaper, square cross-section tools. I suggest getting either a ⅛-in. or ¼-in. tool.

Skew chisel—The edge of this tool, in addition to being double beveled, is also skewed about 25° to 30° to its axis. The skew chisel is the one tool that should not be hollow-ground; it works much better with a flat (or even slightly convex) bevel. Luckily, all skews seem to be delivered with a flat bevel and can be honed on whetstones. If, however, your skew collides with a chuck or lands point-first on concrete, you will have to regrind it. The fastest way to do this and keep it flat is on the side of the wheel, which most grinding manuals advise against. I do it, but I use light pressure on a 1-in.-thick wheel. If you have a Tormek or other super-slow-speed wet grinder, you can use the side of this wheel with complete safety.

A skew slides more easily on the rest if you break the sharp edges of the shank. Touch the four corners of the shank to a grinder, then buff or stone them. The width of a 1-in. chisel allows much more time to judge when things are going awry and to make corrections before disaster strikes.

Mastering the basics of spindle turning

Now that the tools have been sorted out, it is time to start turning. The best way to practice is to cut a dozen hardwood billets 2 in. square by 8 in. long. Find the exact centers of the first billet using a center finder, and make a small indentation using a hole punch or a blunt nail. This aids alignment with the headstock and the tailstock centers. Set the tool rest about two-thirds of the way up the

Preparing the tools for use



Roughing-out gouge. Rest the handle in a pocket holder and rotate the tool against the grinding wheel.



BLUNT FACTORY GRIND



FINGERNAIL GRIND

A nautical comparison. To re-shape the blunt profile of a factory-ground spindle gouge, use a special jig mounted in the pocket holder. The fingernail profile will resemble the bow of a cruise ship.



V-parting tool works best with a hollow grind. To create the grind use either a 6-in. or 8-in. wheel.



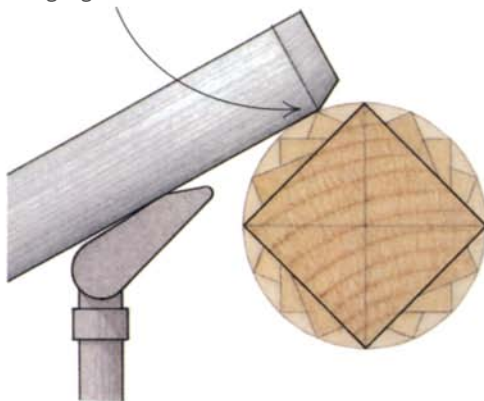
When necessary, regrind a skew chisel. Though it's not recommended in the manual, you can use the side of a 1-in.-thick wheel. Apply gentle pressure and wear eye protection.



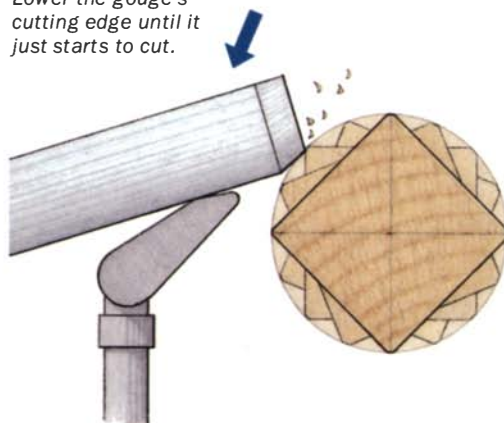
MASTER THE CYLINDER

Mount a square blank between centers and position the tool rest just above the centerline of the lathe. Raise the handle of the roughing-out gouge until the heel clicks on the blank.

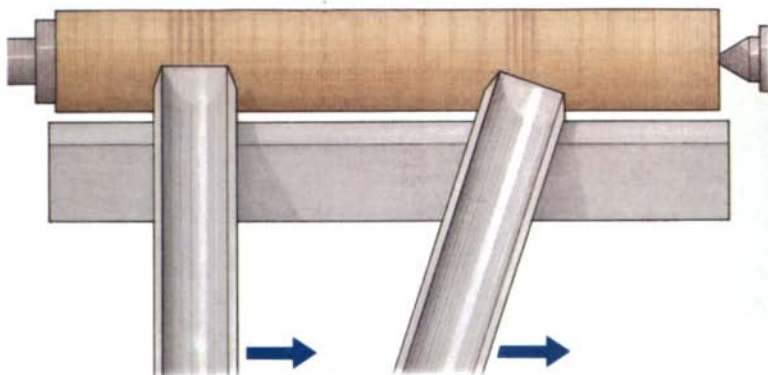
Heel of the gouge clicks.



Lower the gouge's cutting edge until it just starts to cut.



Rounding the billet. Take light passes with the roughing-out gouge to gradually turn the blank round.



For fast rough cuts, move the gouge laterally. Maintain the same cutting angle and keep the tool 90° to the blank.

For smooth cuts, angle the roughing-out gouge in the direction of the cut and move slowly.

CUTTING TAPERS



To cut a smooth and gentle taper, angle the roughing-out gouge in the direction you are cutting (above) and increase the pressure slightly. Use the skew in the same manner (inset).

blank just above the centerline of the lathe. Make sure the blank can turn freely.

Turning a cylinder—To make a billet round, use a roughing-out gouge. Present the gouge high (the handle low) so that just the heel of the bevel touches the work and clicks. Your right hand should be on the forward part of the handle with your thumb and forefinger on the ferrule. (Holding farther back on the handle gives you less feel for the bevel on the work.) Lower the cutting edge by raising the handle until the gouge just starts to cut. Ride the bevel in a shear cut, moving the tool laterally. Maintain the angle you have established until the work just starts to become round.

Turning a taper—The traditional tool for cutting a taper is the skew. Place the corner of

the tool on the rest and present the tool high (handle low) and as square as possible to the work. Now raise the handle until the bevel rubs in a shear cut. The cut should take place over no more than half the length of the cutting edge but biased toward the heel. Once the cut has been established, slide the tool laterally, maintaining the same angle to the work. Move it with the heel leading and the toe following behind the cut. To cut in the opposite direction, turn over the tool.

The roughing-out gouge and the spindle gouge can also cut tapers. Angling the gouge slightly in the direction you wish to cut will make it easy to produce cylinders and gentle tapers.

Cutting coves—The only way to cut a cove is with a spindle gouge. Start by drawing a series of pencil lines ½ in. apart on a freshly

Watch it on the web

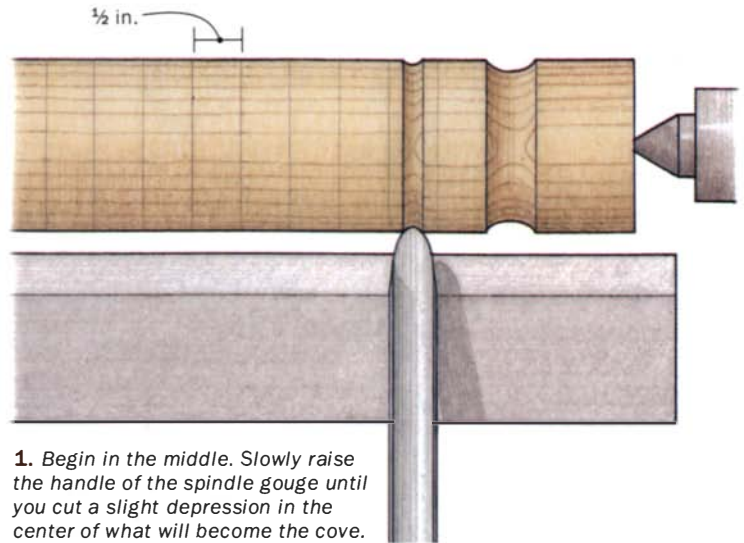
To see a video clip of Ernie Conover turning beads and coves, go to www.finewoodworking.com.

USE A SPINDLE GOUGE TO CUT COVES

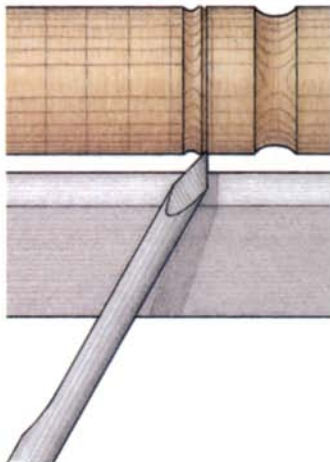


Stay in touch. Keep your left hand near the tip of the tool, and always keep the tool in contact with the tool rest.

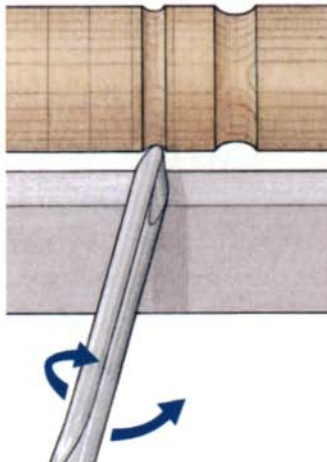
Once you have turned a few 8-in. blanks to cylinders, mark them with a series of lines $\frac{1}{2}$ in. apart. Then start cutting coves.



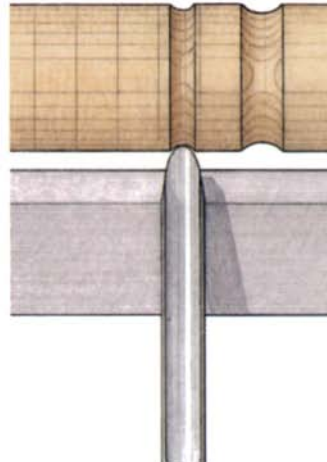
1. Begin in the middle. Slowly raise the handle of the spindle gouge until you cut a slight depression in the center of what will become the cove.



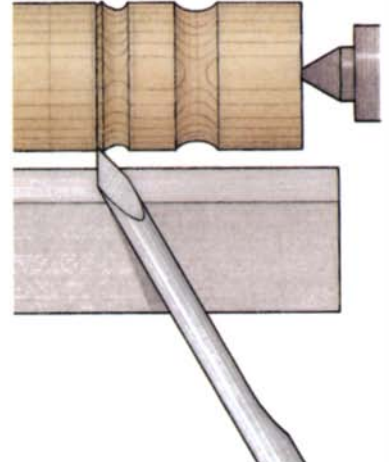
2. Next, cut at the top of the right-hand side of the cove and work downward.



3. Sweep the handle back toward the tailstock while rotating the tool clockwise.



4. Keep sweeping until the flute is at 12 o'clock at the bottom of the arc.



5. Repeat the cutting process starting from the other side and moving the handle to the left.

turned cylinder. Use only the very tip of the gouge during the entire process and keep the bevel parallel to the surface. Think of it as if you were mowing a ditch. If you mow along the ditch, the mower is level, but the mower increasingly leans as you move up the sides. Your gouge should roll in the same way, but think of the bevel and not the flute (shank) of the gouge as the mower. The bevel should always be perpendicular to the grain as you cut.

Your grip on the spindle gouge should be relaxed, and your hand placement should be the same as with the roughing-out gouge. Most beginners try to lock the handle against their hip; however, this holding method results in more catches because the user is trying to overpower the physics of the lathe rather than letting the machine and the tool cut as they are designed to. You cannot overcome physics—at least for very long.

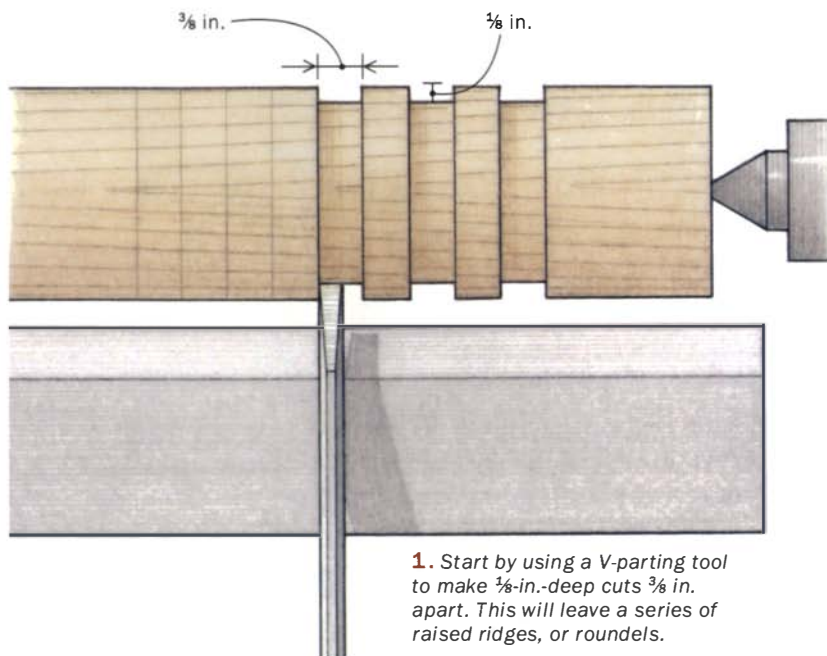
Present the tool high with the heel of the bevel rubbing and the tool square to the axis of the spindle. Lower the cutting edge by



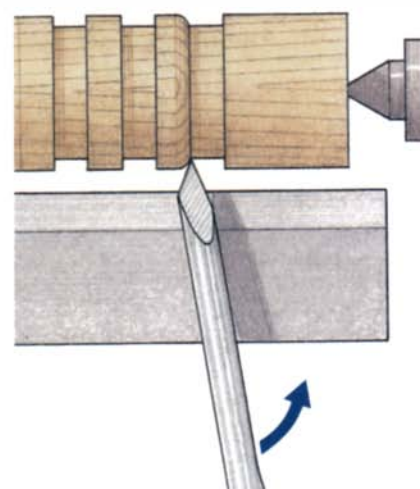
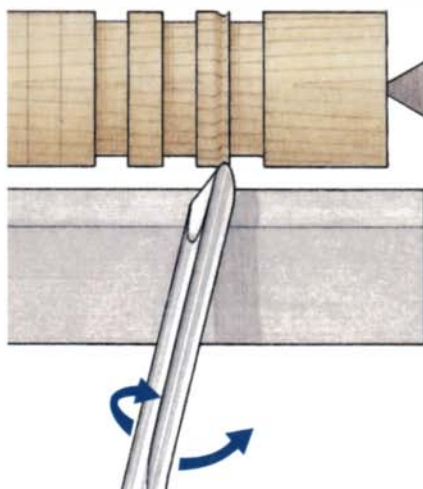
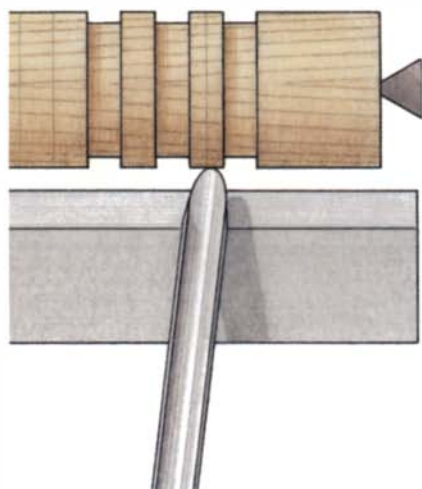
Cutting a cove is like chopping a log with an ax. Gradually deepen the cut, working alternately from both sides.

USE A SPINDLE GOUGE TO CUT CONSISTENT BEADS

Before you can cut a bead, first remove the waste in every alternate section to leave a series of ridges, called roundels.



Cutting a bead. A good-looking bead is elliptical, not a half circle. Remove the wood in a series of light cuts.



raising the handle until you cut a very small depression at the exact center of one of your $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. layouts.

To cut the right-hand side of the cove, roll the gouge so that the top of the flute moves from the 12 o'clock position to approximately 11 o'clock. Touch down the tip of the gouge just beyond where the right-hand side of the cove begins and sweep down to the bottom of the cove, rolling the flute back to the 12 o'clock position. This roll has to be controlled and uniform, and the handle must have room to move, so don't lock it against your hip.

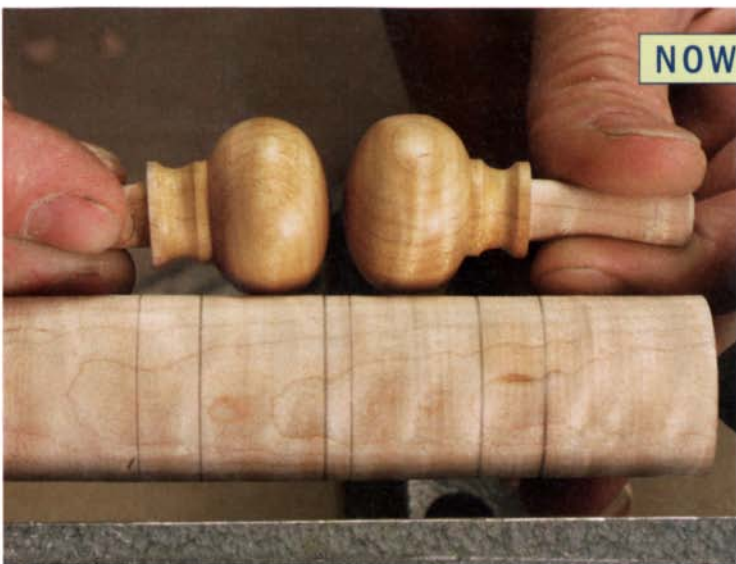
Now repeat the process to cut the left-hand side of the cove, rolling the flute to about 1 o'clock and touching down just beyond the left-hand side. At the bottom of the cove, the tool will have to slide very slightly forward on the rest to get to the bottom of the

cove and still have the bevel rubbing because it is a farther reach to the smaller diameter. Now go to the other side of the cove and repeat a mirror image of what you have just done, alternating between left and right but always ending up at the exact center.

You cannot cut a cove that is a lot narrower than your gouge. Smaller covs get a narrower gouge. The process is much like chopping a log in two with an ax. The cut has to be wider than the ax. You need to cut from each edge to the exact center, cutting downhill on the grain. Cutting the wrong way will likely result in a fuzzy cut or a catch. Think of it as stroking a furry animal.

Cutting beads—The opposite of a cove is a bead, and in my opinion is a more difficult task to master. It is my very strong opinion

NOW TURN SOME DRAWER PULLS



Matching knobs. Turning a pair of drawer pulls from the same blank not only saves time but also yields a matching pair of pulls.

that the only way to turn beads consistently is to use a spindle gouge. Using the skew for this task has its partisans (*FWW* #145, pp. 84-87), but for the small beads normally encountered in spindle turning, it is a risky business.

A good-looking bead (at least in most furniture turning) is not a half circle but rather an ellipse. Therefore, it is not as high as it is wide. To get ready for this exercise, use the V-parting tool to make $\frac{1}{8}$ -in. cuts into a cylinder; space the cuts $\frac{3}{8}$ in. apart. This will yield a row of $\frac{3}{8}$ -in.-wide ridges that are called roundels.

Like the cove, the bead is cut in two stages, one half at a time and always downhill. To cut the right-hand side of the bead, start at the center of the roundel with the gouge angled slightly to the right. This allows you to pick up the major diameter of the roundel without cutting into it. Cut to the right while sweeping the handle around to the left until you are cutting toward the tailstock. This also requires rolling the flute from a little past 12 o'clock until nearly 2 o'clock, sliding the tool slightly backward on the tool rest and raising the handle to keep cutting on the very point. At this point you will be about halfway to the base of the bead.

To cut the elliptical shape of the bead, you must move the handle to the right. Once you reach the base of the bead, the bevel of the gouge should be almost perpendicular to the main axis of the workpiece, with the flute facing 3 o'clock. If you were to continue pushing (very hard), you would cut right through the center of the billet. Simply trying to push the gouge forward once you reach the halfway point will result in a 45° flank to the bead.

Now repeat a mirror image of what you have just done to the left. It is quite normal for the beginner to cut asymmetrical beads, as we all have a bit of left-right bias. Practice will cure this problem. On larger beads you have to start closer to the edge of the roundel and just round the corner on the first pass. Successive passes enhance the shape. Don't try to take too much material with one pass.

The visual impact of a bead is greatly enhanced by inscribing the edges with the toe of a skew. I think this sets apart the bead from the surrounding, your mind completing the shape of the bead inside the turning on a subliminal level. □

Ernie Conover is a turner and teacher in Parkman, Ohio.

The skills learned while turning beads and coves can be put to good use by turning drawer pulls.



The tenon is cut first. Make a series of cuts with the V-parting tool using a wrench as a guide.



Cut a small cove. Center the spindle gouge and gradually raise the handle to increase the depth.



Worry-free beads. With the depth of the bead already defined on both sides by the V-parting tool, round over the sides of the bead with a series of light cuts.



Don't be ashamed to sand your work. Particularly with curly wood, some tearout is inevitable and is easily removed by sanding.



Tombstone Doors

Combine machine work and handwork
to create arched panel doors
with 18th-century style

BY LONNIE BIRD

I've always been intrigued by the close ties between the furniture and architecture of the 18th century. Proportions, shapes, moldings and myriad other details were shared by both house joiners and furniture makers of the period. One of the most commonly shared forms was the arch. This simple, elegant shape has endured since Roman times because of its strength and beauty. In fact, many of today's kitchen cabinets feature arched panel doors, although the distinctive tombstone shape has given way to a more gentle, sweeping arch, which is easier to produce.

The doors play an important part in the aesthetic success of the secretary featured here and in *FWW* #154 and #155. The tall panels give the case its much-needed vertical proportions, and the tombstone arch is visually appealing. As you'll learn,

building a true arched panel door isn't that difficult, and it's only a bit more time-consuming than making a door with a sweeping arch.

Use straight-grained stock for the frame

I begin door construction by measuring the opening in the case. Because the doors are rabbeted along the edges to form a lip, they must be constructed to precise dimensions. Although the doors overlap the opening by $\frac{3}{16}$ in. on top and bottom, they overlap the hinge stile by only $\frac{1}{4}$ in. With a greater overlap, the lip would bind on the cabinet stile and prevent the door from opening. Also, the wide stile on the left-hand door creates the illusion of a center stile when the doors are shut.

Wood selection for the doors is critical. Using straight-grained stock for the frame adds strength and helps prevent warping. After milling the frame stock, lay out and cut the mortise-and-tenon joints. At this point you're ready to lay out and handsaw the arch on the upper rail. The curve is easily smoothed with a file or a spindle sander. Once the arch is smooth, shape the $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. thumbnail sticking along the inside edges, then cut the panel groove.

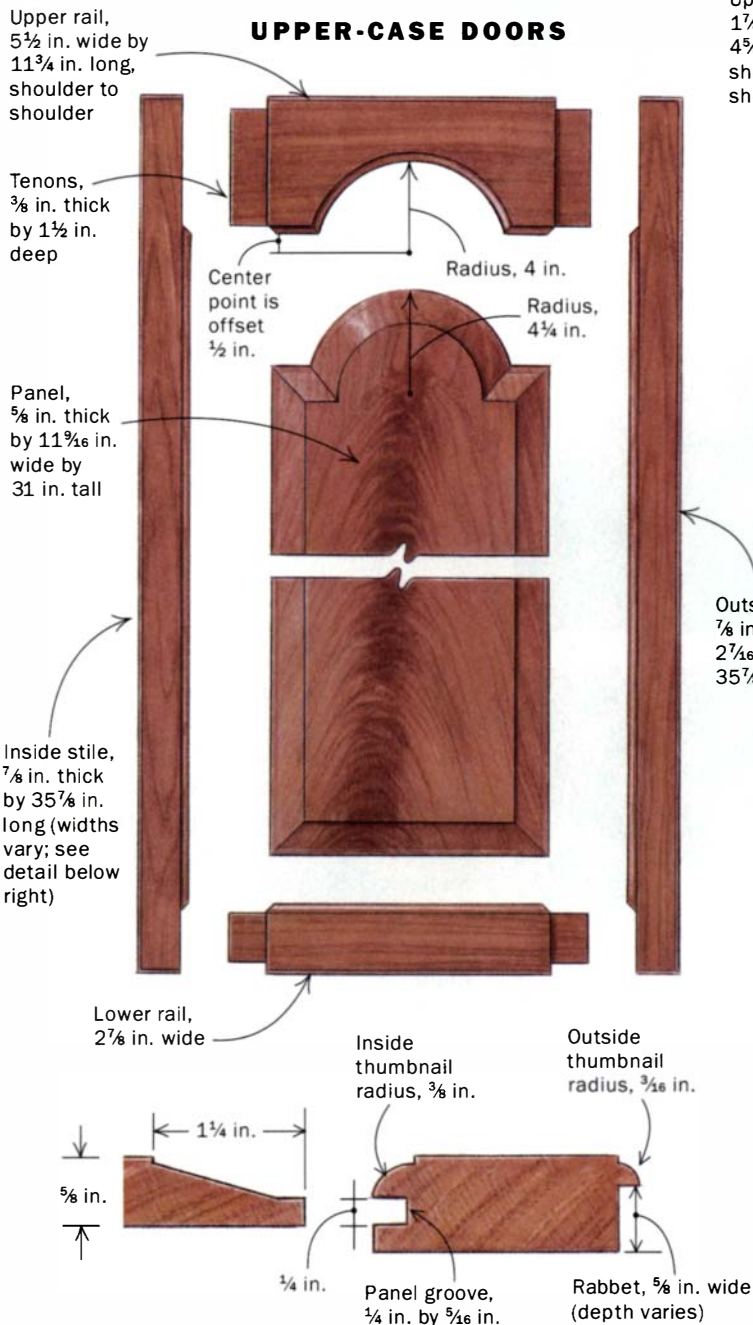
After the shaping has been completed,

Building a
Pennsylvania
Secretary:
Part III of III

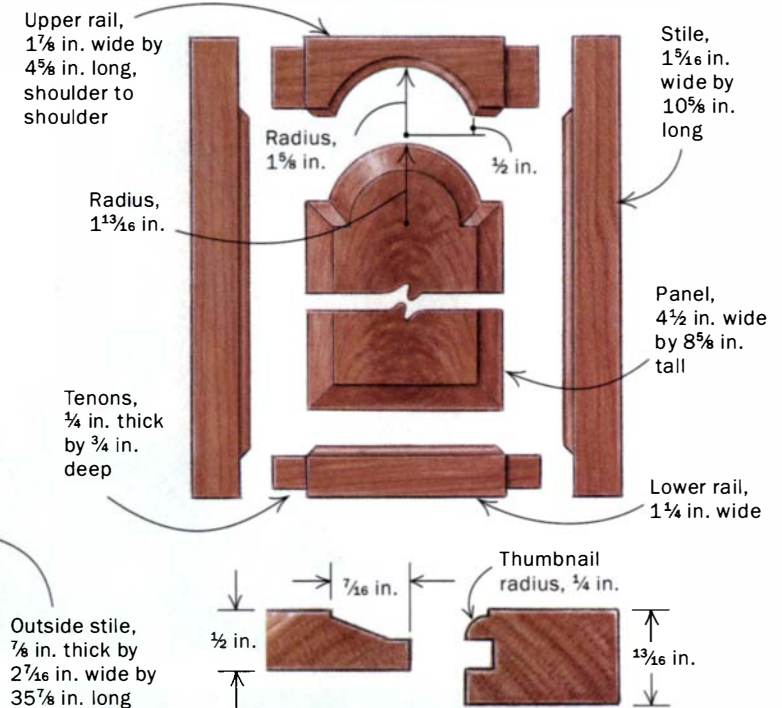
OFFSET, OVERLAY DOORS REQUIRE EXTRA CARE IN SIZING

Bird's tombstone doors are rabbeted to overlay the frame. They are also offset, meaning they close proud of the frame.

UPPER-CASE DOORS

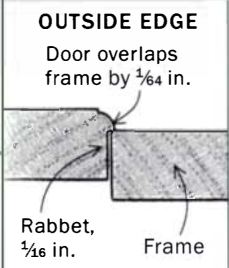
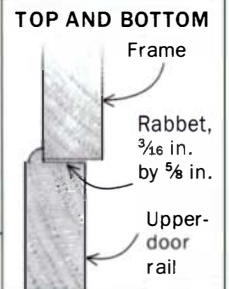
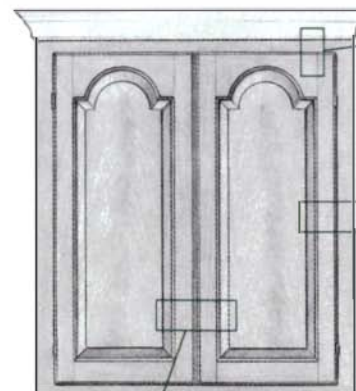


PROSPECT-BOX DOOR



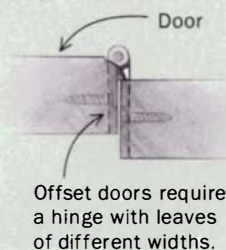
DOOR EDGE DETAILS

When cutting rails and stiles for offset doors, allow for rabbets and thumbnail profiles wherever doors meet each other or the case.

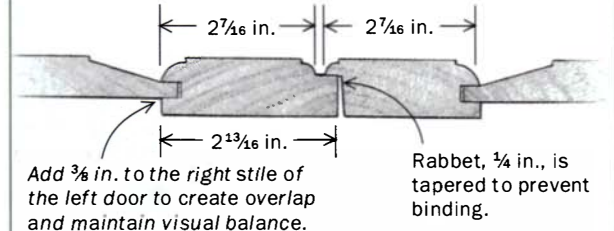


Custom hinges for offset doors

Bird buys brass 1¾-in. by 25/8-in. hinge blanks (Ball and Ball; 800-257-3711) and bandsaws them to size.

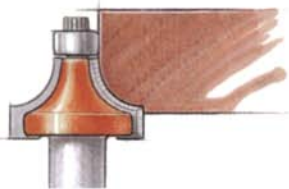


IN CENTER

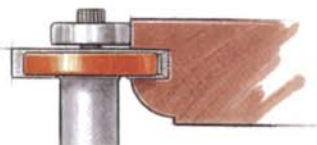


THUMBNAIL DRESSES UP THE FRAME

The thumbnail profile on the inside edge of the frame requires a miter where the rails and stiles meet.



A $\frac{3}{8}$ -in.-radius cove bit in a table-mounted router is used to mill the inner faces of the rails and stiles.



A $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. groove is routed along the rails and stiles.



A tablesaw is used to cut miters along both the rail and the stile. Start by aligning the edge of the blade with the tenon shoulder (left), then establish the miter by crosscutting. Excess thumbnail stock can be trimmed away by using a stopped rip cut.

Finish off by hand. Once the thumbnail has been trimmed away at the table-saw, a little handwork is all that is necessary to clean up the miters.



miter the sticking profile at each intersection (see the drawings and photos at left). This technique allows the use of deep, strong mortise-and-tenon joinery as opposed to the short, stubby tenons created by cope-and-stick router-bit sets. I miter the sticking on the tablesaw and equip the miter gauge with a backer board to prevent tearout. When trimming the miters on the rail, be sure to account for the thumbnail you removed from the rail.

After mitering, the excess sticking on each stile must be removed before assembly. For speed and accuracy, I rip off the excess sticking on the tablesaw using a stop cut. Then I complete the cut into the corner with a chisel. Finally, I dry-clamp the frames and check the fit.

Cut and shape the panel

The nearly 1-ft.-wide panels provide the perfect place to show off figured grain. I never glue up stock for door panels because the seams and mismatched grain become distracting. To help avoid warping, I cut the panel stock oversized and allow it to acclimate to the shop environment. After flattening the panel stock on the jointer and planing it to final thickness, I shape the panel edges immediately and fit the panel within its frame. Allowing the panel to lie around unrestrained by the framework is an invitation for warping. But once the wide panel is trapped within a frame, it can expand and contract with humidity changes, yet it will remain flat.

Before shaping the panel edges, first lay out and cut the arch on the bandsaw. Use the widest blade possible when bandsawing so that you can achieve the smoothest curve possible. Any irregularities in the sawn edge must be removed by hand before shaping.

I typically raise panels on my shaper. If you don't own a shaper, you can use a router table equipped with the appropriate bit. For small panels, like the one in the gallery of the Pennsylvania secretary, CMT makes a scaled-down bit (item No. 800.524.11) with the right proportions and the fillet at the edge of the field to catch light and create a shadowline. I also use the Panel-Loc (www.benchdog.com) to shield my hands from the large-diameter cutter.

The bit rounds the inside corners that flank the arch, so after shaping the panel, some handwork is required. First, lay out each corner with a sharp pencil. Next, in-

TOMBSTONE PANEL REQUIRES HANDWORK

LAY OUT AND SHAPE

Begin by marking out the panel arch (left). To avoid marring the panel surface, locate the center point over a piece of tape. After bandsawing to shape, Bird uses a shaper to raise the upper-case panels (right) and a router table for the prospect-door panel (below).



cise the shoulder at the field; a #2 sweep gouge works best to incise the curve of the arch. Then, use a skew chisel to carve the bevel into the corner. I have a pair of right- and left-hand skew chisels that are custom-ground for this purpose.

With the carving completed, assemble the doors and pin the joints. Next, cut the rabbet around the perimeter of each door. Remember that the rabbet on the hinge stile is shallow—only $\frac{1}{16}$ in. Also, the right stile of the left door is rabbeted on the face, not along the back. After rabbeting, shape the small thumbnail profile, which eliminates the hard, square edge. To shape the thumbnail inset along the edge of the false stile, you'll need a $\frac{3}{16}$ -in.-dia. roundover bit without a guide bearing.

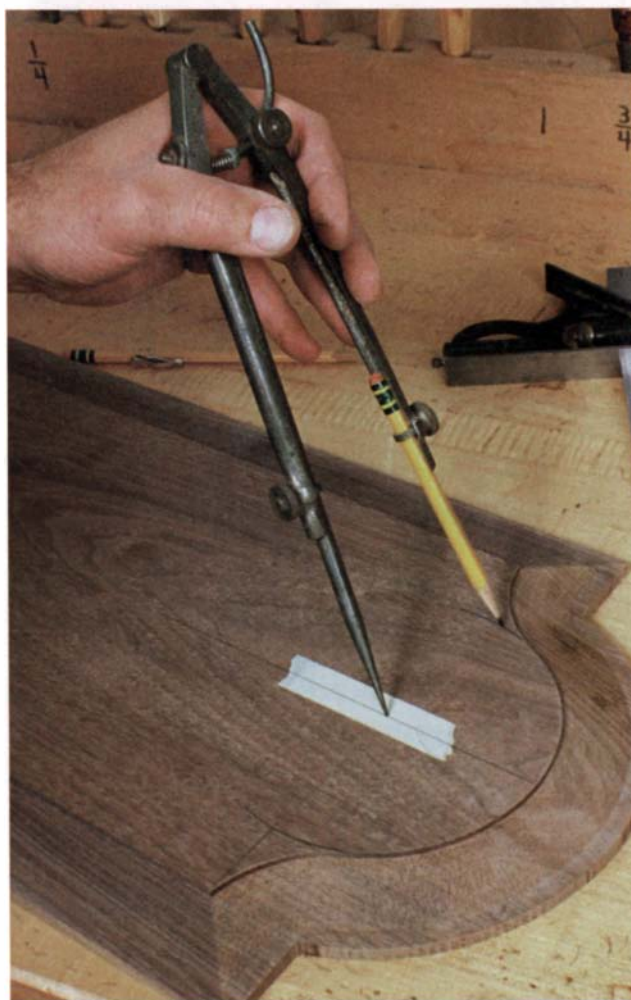
Mount the hardware

To save time when mounting hinges and locks, I rout the mortises using a laminate trimmer equipped with a straight bit. After routing, square the corners of the mortises with a chisel.

If the lipped doors are to function properly, the barrel of the hinge must be located slightly proud of the door face. Also, because the door is lipped, remember to use a hinge that has leaves of different widths.

To my eye, the tombstone doors are the finishing touch on my 18th-century secretary, but it's a look that meshes with almost any thoughtful design. □

Lonnie Bird conducts classes from his shop in Dandridge, Tenn. To obtain a list of classes, e-mail him at lonniebird@earthlink.com.



CARVE THE CORNERS



Use a square and compass to mark out the corners of the arch (left). Scoring with a knife provides a solid reference line. Bird walks a chisel across the area to be removed, leaving less room for error (above). Use a skew chisel to get into the corners (below).



Moisture-Meter Survey

These compact tools can help prevent the most common woodworking problems

BY LON SCHLEINING

As wood scientist R. Bruce Hoadley says, 90% of woodworking problems involve moisture. I couldn't agree more. The most common problems caused by moisture are finishes that don't stick, joinery that breaks apart and boards that take on new and unwanted shapes after milling.

The solution to all of these problems is simple: Use wood that has been properly dried to the right moisture content (see the story below). The easiest way to see that your wood is dry enough is to use a moisture meter. Using a moisture meter, I can be sure that wood I'm about to use is at its

How dry is dry?

Wood is made of microscopic tubes and cells resembling a bundle of straws. Within these straws you find sap, called free water, which evaporates from a freshly cut tree. But the actual straws are made of cells that also contain fluid, called bound water. A certain amount of bound water will remain in the wood even as it dries.

The moisture content of wood is measured as a ratio of the weight of water in the wood to the weight of the wood when it is

completely dry. This ratio is expressed as a percentage. A piece of wood that goes from 14% to 8% moisture content shrinks, and if it goes back to 14%, it expands. If temperature and humidity vary, the moisture content of wood in that environment will also vary. If you don't account for moisture content, your furniture will certainly fail—panels bust out of their frames and case pieces crack apart.

With few exceptions, you can't simply cut down a tree and start building furniture. A



Big pins...



little pins...



or no pins

Moisture meters use either pins or an electromagnetic plate (pinless) to measure moisture. Some pin-style meters take deep readings with hammer probes (far left); others take readings from $\frac{5}{8}$ in. or less (center). Both styles leave marks. Pinless meters (right) leave no marks but require the wood surface to be smooth. Pinless meters detect moisture down to about $\frac{5}{8}$ in.

optimum moisture content: between 8% and 12%.

A moisture meter can really help you when you're working on a project and need additional lumber to complete the job. How can you be sure the new stock has the same moisture content as the stuff that you have been working on for the last several weeks? And if you dry your own lumber, it goes without saying that a moisture meter will let you know when your stock is ready to be worked.

There are many moisture meters on the market, with features and prices to accommodate a wide range of woodworkers. I

recently looked at a dozen priced from \$60 to \$350. I was happily surprised to find that their overall accuracy is quite good. So the choice comes down to which features you are willing to pay for and which ones you can do without.

Moisture meters come in two basic styles

There are two styles of moisture meters: pin and pinless. A pin-style moisture meter has two pins that are pushed into the wood. An electrical charge emits from one pin to the other, using the wood as the conductor. The meter measures electrical

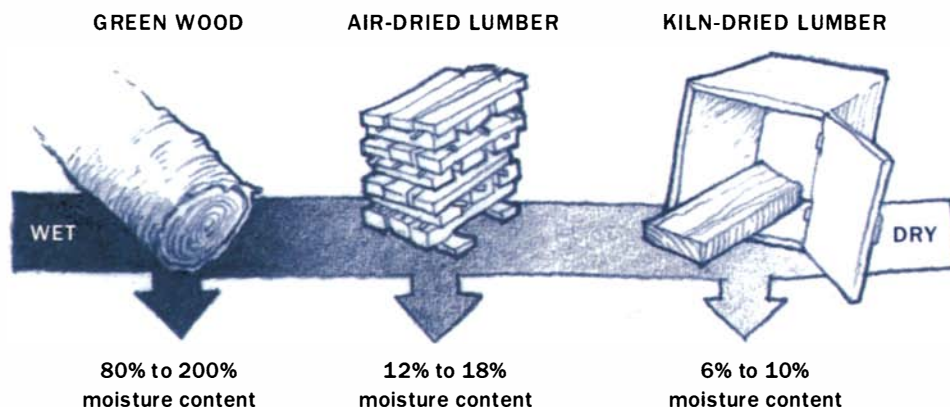
resistance within the board and gives a moisture reading. As wood dries, the conductivity changes (decreases).

Instead of an electrical charge, a pinless meter uses radio waves to penetrate the wood. The radio waves create an electromagnetic field. As the waves bounce back from the wood, the meter measures the reaction of the waves to the moisture in the wood. The meter translates this behavior into a percentage of moisture content.

Where a pin-style meter takes a reading at a specific spot, a pinless meter takes a reading that's the size of the sensing pad (usually about 1 in. by 2 in.). All styles of

freshly cut tree has a moisture content of 80% to 200%. When it air-dries, it will be left with a moisture content of about 12% to 18%. If wood is kiln-dried, the wood will reach a moisture content of 6% to 10%.

Monitoring moisture content tells a woodworker when stock is ready to be worked. An ideal moisture content will vary depending upon where you live, but a rule of thumb is 8% to 12%.



LARGE-PIN METERS

Some pin-style meters offer an optional hammer probe, which is used to get a reading in thicker wood, such as 8/4 stock. If you dry your own lumber, a hammer probe will be a worthwhile accessory.

DELMHORST J-LITE

This is a meter anyone could learn to use in five minutes. Provides a simple LED readout in whole numbers. Charts correct for temperature and species. Instructions are easy to follow. Hammer probe is an accessory.

DELMHORST J-2000

Comes with a well-written, easy-to-follow manual. Settings are complicated to use—each button is used for different functions at different times. It saves and accumulates readings. Has a built-in temperature compensation. Hammer probe is an accessory. Provides detailed digital readout.

DELMHORST J-4

Easy to use: stick in the pins and push a button. I like the analog dial a great deal. Instructions are easy to understand. Comes with a slide rule-type temperature-correction tool. Hammer probe is an accessory.

MANUFACTURER/ MODEL	CONTACT	PRICE	SPECIES CORRECTION	WARRANTY
DELMHORST J-LITE	(800) 746-7342 www.delmhorst.com	\$125 \$200 with probe	Chart	Three years
DELMHORST J-4		\$175 \$250 with probe	Chart	One year
DELMHORST J-2000		\$290 \$365 with probe	Chart/internal	One year
LIGNOMAT MINI LIGNO C	(800) 227-2105 www.lignomat.com	\$105 \$175 with probe	Chart/internal	One year
LIGNOMAT MINI LIGNO DX/C		\$230 \$300 with probe	Chart/internal	Three years

LIGNOMAT MINI LIGNO DX/C

The meter has a lot of settings, but it's very easy to use. Hammer probe, which is an accessory, is just heavy enough to use easily to penetrate even the hardest woods. Offers internal calibration with easy-to-change settings. Both temperature and species correction are done internally, so there's no need for conversion charts. Comes with a simple instruction pamphlet.

LIGNOMAT MINI LIGNO C

Easy to use. Provides a simple LED readout in whole numbers. Automatically turns on when the pins touch the wood. Turns off automatically. Comes with a plastic case. Has a simple two-position switch for species correction. Standard pins are $\frac{1}{8}$ in. long, but the meter can be connected to an optional hammer probe.



meters detect the moisture content effectively; they just go about it differently.

Pin-style meters—Depending on the model, the pins can penetrate anywhere from $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to more than 1 in. deep. Some pin-style meters come with a hammer-probe attachment that allows you to pound larger pins into the wood, providing a deeper measurement of the interior of a plank. All of the instruction manuals for the meters I looked at suggested that the pins always be parallel to the grain—that is, the pins should be in line with the grain.

Pinless meters—The main advantage of pinless meters is that they leave no marks in the wood. The pinless meters I tested performed well and were easy to use. When testing lumber, the surface should be smooth enough to allow for good con-

tact, so a pinless meter wouldn't be my first choice for testing rough lumber. A good rule of thumb is that the board be smooth enough to run your finger over it without getting a splinter. Also, if you're checking a board at the lumberyard, these meters require you to remove the board from the pile; otherwise the meter might measure the next plank down along with the one on top. And very small pieces often are difficult for a pinless meter to read accurately. The meters I tested have a maximum scan depth of about $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (You can get models that scan deeper, but they are more expensive.)

Pick a meter based on your needs

The meters I looked at varied, the smallest being little more than the size of a deck of cards, and the largest the size of a small

Accounting for lumber species

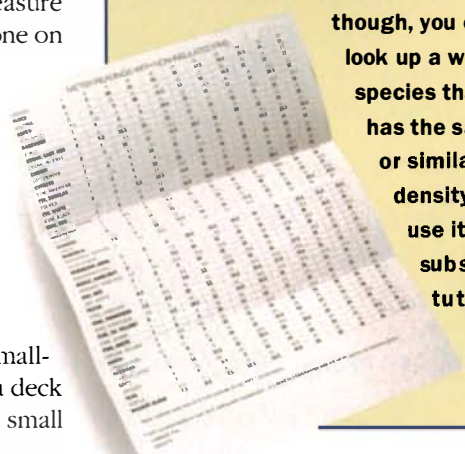
Woods vary in density, which can affect the reading you get on a moisture meter. Though a meter can't tell one species from another, it can correct a reading to account for this variation using a chart or a chart plus an internal setting.

It's easy to use a meter that has only a chart. Take a reading and then look in the chart to find the species you're testing. The chart gives you a number to correct your reading by. Say you're testing pine, and the meter reading is 12%. If the chart says the correction for pine is to add 1%, the actual moisture content is 13%.

When using a meter that has a chart plus internal species correction, first find in the chart the species you're testing. Then reset the meter for that species, and the meter will provide an internally adjusted, accurate reading.

Some manufacturers provide extensive correction charts, covering lots of wood species, while others include only common ones. If a board you're testing is not in your chart (and many exotics aren't), call the manufacturer or check its web site for the correction. Usually,

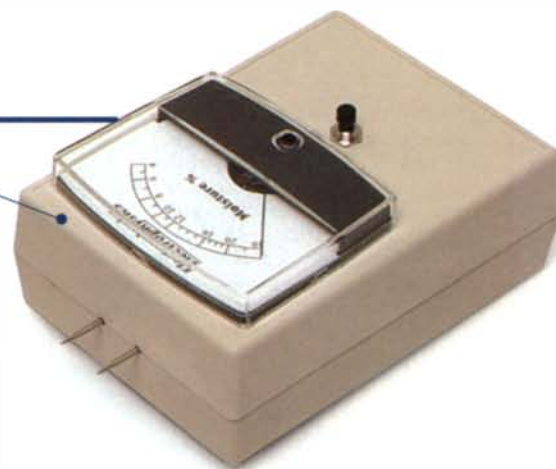
though, you can look up a wood species that has the same, or similar, density and use it as a substitute.



SMALL-PIN METERS

ELECTROPHYSICS MT 270

Analog dial is easy to read. Extra pins also are loose (they were simply taped to an instruction sheet). This is the only pin-type meter I looked at that lacks a guard.



PROTIMETER DIGITAL-MINI

A functional meter with very accurate calibration. Sturdy construction. Offers digital readout. Comes with a good case and a belt loop. The species correction is detailed, with many options. There are, for example, six options for oak.



PROTIMETER BLD-5700 TIMBERMASTER

Has a long and slender shape that fits easily into a pocket. Comes with a calibration device and remote sensor. Provides detailed digital readout. The only meter reviewed that comes with a remote temperature-sensing probe that automatically corrects for temperature.



TIMBER CHECK

This meter is very easy to use. It is a sturdy, functional meter and compact in size. Does not automatically shut off like some of the other meters and does not allow for calibration. Has a tight-fitting plastic cover for the pins.



radio plus the hammer probe and case. I compared the readings that each of these meters gave on four different boards. One had been oven-dried; the second had been kiln-dried to what turned out to be about 6% moisture content; the third had been partially air-dried and measured about 10%; and the fourth was very wet at about 30%. It's worth noting that the very dry and very wet boards exceeded the normally effective range of most of the meters (6% to 30%). I found that the readings did not vary by more than one or two percentage points. That's good enough for me to claim that all of the meters are reliable. What distinguishes some of these moisture meters from others are the accessories, the detail of the readings, their ease of use, including portability and how fragile or robust they would be under actual working conditions.

No matter what moisture meter you use, you're going to have to make adjustments based on the species you're testing (see p. 81). All of the meters I tested required a

MANUFACTURER/ MODEL	CONTACT	PRICE	SPECIES CORRECTION	WARRANTY
ELECTROPHYSICS MT 270	(800) 244-9908 www.electrophysics.on.ca	\$110	Chart	Two years
PROTIMETER DIGITAL-MINI	(800) 321-4878 www.moisture-meter.com	\$250	Chart	One year
PROTIMETER BLD-5700 TIMBERMASTER		\$348	Chart/internal	One year
TIMBER CHECK	(613) 256-5437	\$60	Chart	Three years

chart—for some it is to look up the corrected reading and for others it is to determine the code needed to set the moisture meter to a specific species. I like the meters that make species correction easy. The Wagner meters offer an erasable pad on the front that allows you to write the codes for the often tested species. I was also impressed at the extensive listing that some of these models had for species. For example, the Protimeter Digital-Mini had more than six species of oak to choose from.

I really like the look and feel of the Protimeter BLD-5700 Timbermaster, but it's really more meter than I need—even though I enjoyed using the temperature-sensing probe. If I ran a kiln, had an engineering background or routinely air-dried my own lumber, I would choose a meter with a hammer-probe attachment (see pp. 80-81), which allows the meter to take deeper readings, and with lots of features such as internal species correction. The Delmhorsts were certainly easy to use and had the most understandable manuals, but the meters were a bit on the bulky side to carry around.

If I were heading to the lumberyard today to purchase a load of vertical-grain Douglas fir, I'd probably take the Wagner MMC 210, which clips to a belt so it's handy. With it I can quickly and discreetly scan a stack of lumber without leaving pin holes in the boards. □

Lon Schleining is a contributing editor.

PINLESS METERS



ELECTROPHYSICS CT 100

For species correction, this one has a reference chart that provides a number to set the meter to so you can get an accurate reading. The optional calibration plates are fragile and require careful handling, but they were packed in a sandwich bag. The meter could use even a simple case.

WAGNER MMC 205

This meter has nearly all of the features found on the MMC 210, except for a separate button for inputting the species code. It's accurate, easy to use, compact and ruggedly built.

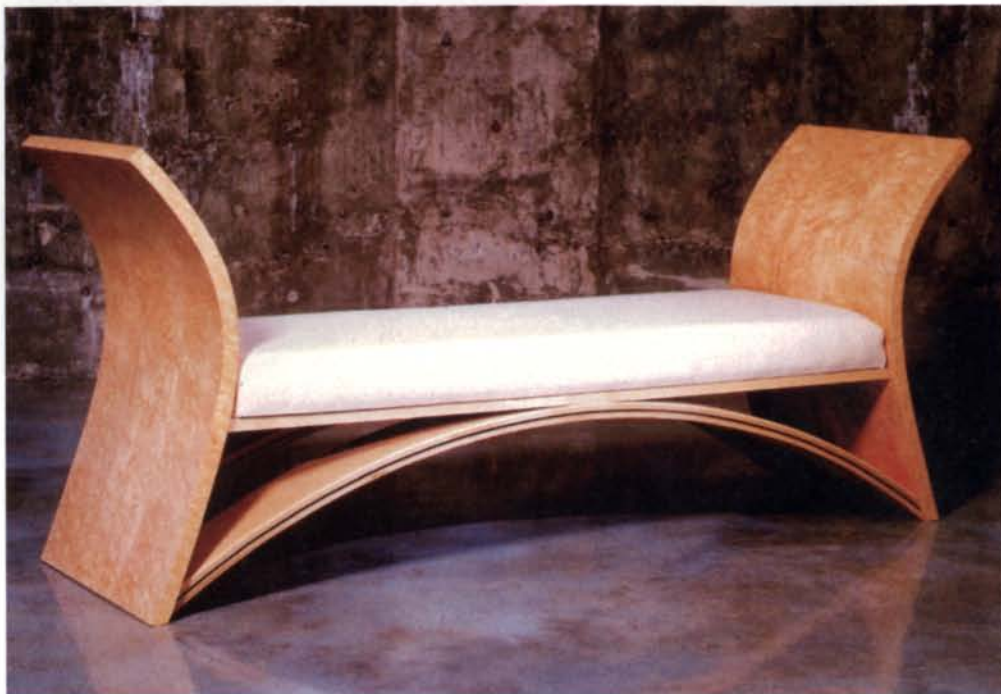
WAGNER MMC 210

Has a very compact, functional design. Note pad on the front keeps track of the species correction for your most frequently tested types of wood. Comes with a case and a belt clip. The manual fits neatly within the storage case.

MANUFACTURER/ MODEL	CONTACT	PRICE	SPECIES CORRECTION	WARRANTY
ELECTROPHYSICS CT 100	(800) 244-9908 www.electrophysics.on.ca	\$198	Chart/internal	Two years
WAGNER MMC 205	(800) 634-9961 www.moisturemeters.com	\$195	Chart/internal	One year
WAGNER MMC 210		\$285	Chart/internal	One year

Current Work

Current Work provides design inspiration by showcasing the work of our readers. For more details and an entry form, visit our web site at www.finewoodworking.com. Send photos and entry forms to **Current Work**, *Fine Woodworking*, 63 S. Main St., Newtown, CT 06470.



◀ **Andrew Muggleton**
Denver, Colo.

Muggleton, who designs contemporary furniture, sketched out this bench (23 in. deep by 71 in. wide by 31 in. tall) three years ago when he first started wood-working. He built it this past year when he was represented by the Pismo Gallery at the SOFA exposition in Chicago. The sides and base of the bench are bent laminations veneered with bird's-eye maple. The piece is finished with high-gloss lacquer and is upholstered in Ultrasuede.

Lucinda Daly ▶
Berkeley, Calif.

Daly and her husband are avid nighttime readers. As a result, large heaps of books and magazines accumulate on the floor by each side of the bed. These two cherry bedside tables (18 in. deep by 21 in. wide by 30 in. tall) have solved this problem. Created in the spirit of the Arts and Crafts style, the tables feature flared legs, decorative aprons and stained-glass inserts in the doors. The finish is a hand-rubbed oil.



Steven Sackmann Somerville, Mass. ►

Based on a piece he saw in Albert Sack's *Fine Points of Furniture* (out of print), Sackmann built this table (17 in. deep by 17 in. wide by 26 in. tall) as his first project for the North Bennet Street School in Boston, Mass. Constructed of mahogany, satinwood, anegre, rosewood and a secondary wood of pine, the piece features a crotch-mahogany book-matched top and rosewood crossbanding with ebony stringing around the top and the drawer fronts. The finish is a stained glaze and French-polished shellac. Photo by Lance Patterson



Hillard Gerhardt ▲

Cedar Crest, N.M.

Gerhardt, a 60-year woodworking veteran, became determined to try something larger and more challenging after reading Patrick Spielman's *The Art of the Lathe* (Sterling Publications, 1997). This segmented turned wood vase (24½ in. dia. by 28½ in. tall) is the result of more than 600 hours of work. Constructed out of 3,410 pieces and using eight different species of wood, the vase features a Southwestern design with crushed turquoise inlays. It is finished with a rubbed lacquer.

Pete Rodrigues Kitty Hawk, N.C. ▼

After graduating from college with a degree in art, Rodrigues decided to try his hand at designing and building custom furniture. This Honduras mahogany coffee table (24 in. deep by 46 in. wide by 18 in. tall) has an elliptical top that was cut from one solid piece of mahogany. The piece is finished with satin lacquer. Photo by Ray Matthews





Jason Veriabo Senior ▲

Veriabo was looking for a challenging project that would stand out and demonstrate his skills. "In Mr. Trout's classroom," said Veriabo, "the sky is the limit." And when he saw the highboy featured on the front cover of *FWW* #117, Veriabo knew it was everything he was looking for. Taking about 300 hours to construct, the highboy (20 in. deep by 36 in. wide by 90 in. tall) is made of cherry and has a clear Deft lacquer finish. Photo by John Perkins

Top of Their Class

For the past three years, George M. Trout has sent us portfolios of his students' work. Trout has taught industrial technology at Springfield High School in Pennsylvania for 16 years. "Our woodworking courses continue to flourish despite the national trend to eliminate such high-school programs in favor of computerization," said Trout. The editors of *Fine Woodworking* noticed the impressive work being done by Trout's students and decided to devote this page to showcase some of their work. Photo courtesy of Springfield High School



Robert Addis Sophomore ►

Addis was flipping through a magazine when a picture of a scroll-saw cathedral clock caught his eye. "I knew it would be time-consuming," said Addis, "but I made the commitment." Taking about 400 hours to complete, the cherry clock (9 in. deep by 20 in. wide by 37 in. tall) was constructed from 1,511 individual cutouts. The piece features a quartz clock movement and is finished with clear Deft lacquer. Photo by John Perkins



► Brett Shaffer Senior

Shaffer wanted his senior-year project to be a tour de force that would inspire future students. Wanting to re-create an antique piece with elaborate carvings, he chose to build this English sideboard (20 in. deep by 68 in. wide by 71 in. tall). Shaffer used Central American mahogany in the sideboard's construction. It has a Minwax red mahogany stain and clear Deft lacquer finish. Photo by John Perkins



◀ **Robert G. Twomey** Ooltewah, Tenn.

Asked to make this walnut chest (20½ in. deep by 38¾ in. wide by 26¾ in. tall) for a client, Twomey found in this project the perfect opportunity to expand his woodworking talents. He decided to cut the dovetails with a bowsaw, the same way he had seen Mack Headley do it at the 2001 Williamsburg conference on 18th-century chairs. He made the bowsaw based on photos taken at the conference and cut all 52 tails by hand. "This is my first attempt at hand-cut dovetails," said Twomey, "and they all fit perfectly." The chest has an oil and lacquer finish.

Richard Green Eugene, Ore. ▶

A recently retired University of Oregon groundskeeper, Green built this globe stand (18½ in. deep by 18½ in. wide by 24 in. tall) for a friend and former coworker. The base is made of quilted maple while the ring is constructed of layers of padauk on the outside and quilted maple on the interior. He made the ring by cutting the laminated pieces first into an octagon, then into a circle and then joining them with laminated splines. The stand is finished with 10 coats of semigloss clear Deft lacquer. Photo by Dick Castle



David Brendel ▲
Brookeville, Md.

Brendel presented this Chippendale tea table (17 in. deep by 24 in. wide by 23½ in. tall) to his wife to honor her on her first year of motherhood. The piece, which took about 60 hours to complete, is made of Honduras mahogany. The finish is a flat-sheen catalyzed lacquer.

Tips for photographing your furniture

1. *Clean and dust the furniture.*
2. *The furniture will appear more three-dimensional if it is lit so that each plane has a different brightness. Take care, however, to avoid excessively bright highlights or dark shadows.*
3. *To be sure the photos will be free of distortion, avoid the use of wide-angle lenses, and photograph with the camera positioned even with the center of the furniture both vertically and horizontally.*
4. *Use 35mm color print (negative) film of moderate speed (ISO 200-400). If you're using a digital camera, shoot at the highest resolution and place the image on a CD.*
5. *Photograph the furniture from several angles. Include some head-on shots, as well as some shots that show both the front and side of a piece.*
6. *Keep the background simple. A cluttered or otherwise distracting background may draw the viewer's attention away from the subject.*

Designing furniture: a survival guide

Designing a piece of furniture should be fun, not intimidating. Yet I know woodworkers who think nothing of building complicated jigs or mastering difficult finishes but feel lost when it comes to designing a piece of furniture truly their own.

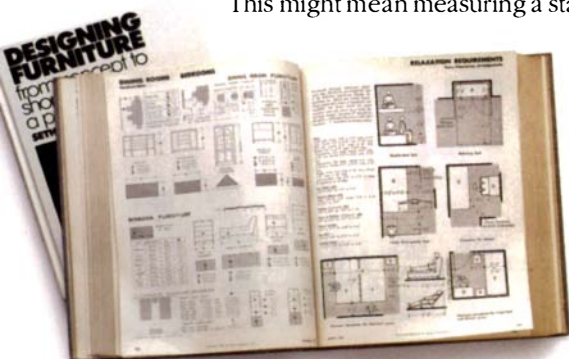
The most important thing you can do is to train your eye. Look at furniture you like. Look in books, or go to museums, galleries and new or antique furniture stores. Discover what appeals to you and why. In my previous article on designing a chest of drawers (*FWW* #151, pp. 54-57), I talked about absorbing ideas from the past and synthesizing them into your own vision. Jot down your discoveries as you make them. Measure the back of a particularly comfortable chair or the height of the seat. Keep a sketchbook of inspiring ideas; you never know how you might use some detail or rough sketch later.

Gaining confidence as a designer is more subtle than, say, learning to cut dovetails, but it's just another skill. I'll give you the loose process I follow when designing furniture and some tools and techniques that will help you along the way.

Start with what you know

A good place to start a design is with the givens—there are always some. Say you're designing a piece with drawers. What are you going to store and how much space does it take up?

This might mean measuring a stack of sweaters or sizing up particularly useful drawers you already use. If you're designing a table, consider whether it will be used next to a sofa or a bed or worked at while standing or sitting. How large does the top need to be?



Where to start. Furniture design books and architectural standard guides are good places to look for practical measurements based on average body types and ergonomic factors.

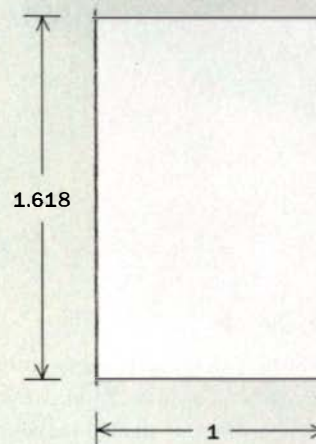
Architectural Graphic Standards (John Wiley & Sons, 2000) is one place to get the starting points for a design. This book gives practical dimensions for a wide range of furniture.

Work out the lines and proportions

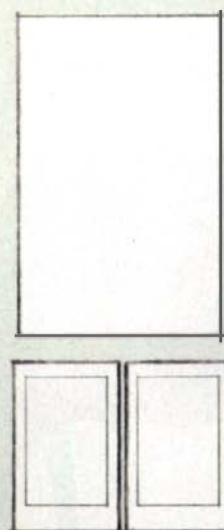
Now, armed with (or saddled with, depending on how you look at it) the practical dimensions, work on the overall proportions and lines of the piece.

Proportion is the size relationship of the parts. It's the width of a table compared with its length or the height of each drawer face compared with the ones above and below it. But don't think only about the proportions of parts you can see; the negative spaces formed between the parts are also important. Tables and chairs create lots of negative spaces, interesting ones that can mirror and

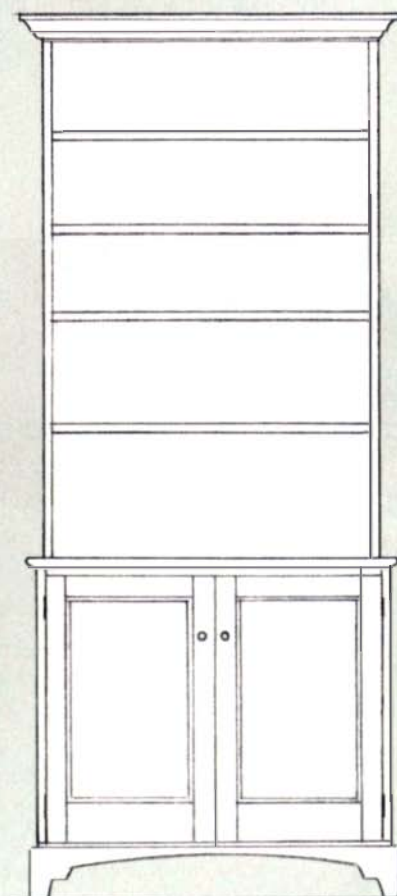
THE GOLDEN RECTANGLE



A useful proportioning rule is the golden rectangle, or golden mean, a ratio of roughly 1:1.6. It's a pleasing proportion for cabinet doors, tabletops, the front or sides of a chest of drawers, anything rectangular. You can use it to proportion the panels of a large multipaneled door, as well as the door itself. And you can stack multiple golden rectangles together—for example, a cabinet one high and two or three long.



The golden rectangle was used to proportion the doors, the door panels and the upper case of this cabinet.



www.jesada.com FW1299

JESADA TOOLS

Log onto www.jesada.com:
Register to Win Router Bits!
Internet Discounts!
Latest Products!
Technical Info!
Great Prices!

Order online for full lines of:
Router Bits
Saw Blades
Planer Knives
Router Tables
Shaper Cutters
Router Accessories
and Much, Much More!
www.jesada.com

Or Call: 1-800-531-5559
for Customer Service

Quality Router Bits
Made in USA

For ALL your router needs!

READER SERVICE NO. 161

ROBERTS PLYWOOD

THE SOURCE FOR EXOTIC, FANCY PLYWOOD AND VENEER

PLYWOOD
Anigre, Karelian Birch Burl, Bubinga, Macassar Ebony, Kewazinga, Lacewood, Makore, Bird's Eye Maple, Curly Maple, Swiss Pearwood, European Planetree, Santos Rosewood, English Sycamore, Wenge, Zebrawood, and many many more.

VENEER
From Aframosia to Zebrawood, including Crotch Mahogany and many of the Burls. Available in paper back and the new 2-ply NBL (no black line) wood backed veneer.

In stock at our 77,000 ft. warehouse, we can ship orders same day.

Visa, MasterCard, Amex

45 N. Industry Ct., Deer Park, N.Y. 11729

631-586-7700 Fax: 631-586-7009
1-800-422-4944

WWW.GETWOOD.COM

READER SERVICE NO. 142

CD-1000

NEW

***295⁰⁰**

Vacuum Bagging Kit

Includes continuous duty vacuum pump...
no compressor needed. 54 x 61 bag
with our exclusive "Quick-Zip" closure and
welded-in-place vacuum hose connection.

888-342-8262 **VAC-U-CLAMP**

READER SERVICE NO. 114

Teardrop Trailer Plans

Build your own classic camping trailer!
The ultimate woodworking project

- NO WELDING REQUIRED!
- FULL GALLEY IN REAR

8' Cubby

Complete plans include built-in icebox, stove, water tank, 12V electric system, cabinets, floor hatch for porta-potty. Sleeps two inside the cabin, 4' x 8', 900 lbs.

Kuffel Creek Press • www.kuffelcreek.com
PO Box 2663 • Riverside • CA 92516 • fax 909/781-9409

READER SERVICE NO. 203

Personal Robotic Tools for Productivity and Flexibility



ShopBot PRT96

ShopBot
The WorkShop RoBot

(919) 680-4800
Durham, NC
Fax (919) 680-4900

888-680-4466

www.ShopBotTools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 113

LOCK MORTISER HORIZONTAL & VERTICAL WORK 5/8, 3/4, 1" BIT 23000 RPM \$880	EDGE LIPPING PLANER \$440 FLUSH PLANE EDGE STRIPS 2-1/4" WIDE CARBIDE BLADES FOR HARD WOOD SOLID SURFACE. NON SCRATCH BASE CONTINUOUS ADJUST CUT DEPTH REMOVE RATE UP TO 1/8" 17 LBS 1050 W	EDGE BANDERS MOTORIZED FLUSH TRIM TOP+BOTTOM & ENDS AUTO BELT FEEDER PRE-GLUED PVC & VENEER 220 V. 1 PHASE 900 COLOR MATCH TAPES EB-25 \$5,800 EB-10 BENCH MOUNT MOTORIZED FLUSH TOP+BOTTOM TRIM AUTO END CUT SAME HEATER/TRIMMER AS EB25 BANDS CURVES WITH FEEDER \$3400 W/O \$2950 CURVE BANDER \$1950
DOOR PLANER \$390 18"x3" 1 PIECE CAST ALUMIN. HOUSING 13 LBS MICRO BEVEL FENCE INCLUDED	LAMINATE+VENEER SLITTER \$1500 POWERED SLITTER 30" WIDE, SPEED: 35 FT. NO WIDTH LIMIT ON 4'x8" INLaid QUALITY 110V	EDGE BANDERS EB-25 \$5,800 EB-10 BENCH MOUNT MOTORIZED FLUSH TOP+BOTTOM TRIM AUTO END CUT SAME HEATER/TRIMMER AS EB25 BANDS CURVES WITH FEEDER \$3400 W/O \$2950 CURVE BANDER \$1950
CURVE PLANER \$325 3" WIDE, 17" CONVEX-CONCAVE SELF-INDEX BLADE CARBIDE 2 SIDE BLADES GLUE SPREADER WHITE GLUE 2 ROLLERS 3.5" UPPER 4.75" LOWER \$99	STATIONARY MITER CUTTER \$230	BISCUIT JOINER \$340

CALL FOR FREE VIDEO

COMPLETE MANUAL SYSTEM
HOT AIR BANDER + DOUBLE EDGE & END TRIMMER

WWW.VIRUTEX.COM
800-868-9663
FAX 212-989-1777
601 W. 26 NY, NY 10001

READER SERVICE NO. 112

Somebody Was Thinking



Our new cabinet saw, the Laguna TS, has too many innovations to list them all. For information, call 800-234-1976.

800-234-1976
17101 Murphy Ave.
Irvine, CA 92614
(949) 474-1200

LAGUNA TOOLS
Fine European Woodworking Machinery

800-234-1976
www.lagunatools.com
E-mail: mail@lagunatools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 208

Rules of Thumb (continued)

reinforce the positive, as is the case with the shapely curved back splats of 18th-century chairs.

A useful rule is the golden mean, a ratio of 1:1.618, also called the golden rectangle. It's a classical proportion for anything rectangular, such as cabinet doors, tabletops and the front or sides of a chest of drawers.

Avoid the tiresome stock lumberyard dimensions $\frac{3}{4}$ in., $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., and $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. in door rails and stiles, dividers between drawers, table aprons and other highly visible parts. A variety of sizes and proportions is the most visually stimulating.

Drawings and mock-ups—Typically I make lots of small sketches to get a sense of my design before making accurate full-scale drawings. Drafting full scale is always best for working out the shape of curves, details or tricky joinery, and for recognizing potential problems before you get there. It's a useful way to see exactly what you're designing and whether the shapes and proportions are pleasing.

A full-sized drawing offers other benefits. You can transfer angles and dimensions (such as shoulder lines) directly from the drawing to the parts, making fewer errors than reading measurements off a tape. Once you get curves and con-

Designing a blanket chest. Hack works out proportions and details in his sketchbook before moving on to full-sized drawings.

tours the way you like them, you can make patterns directly from the drawing.

Drawings, however, often aren't enough to help you visualize a three-dimensional piece of furniture. At some stage a mock-up of all or part of the piece might be the best way to visualize the design. Tape together cardboard cutouts or nail together some scraps. Stand back and look at your mock-up (and drawing) from different angles. Work on something else and come back to your design with a fresh eye. Use your eyes—not your tape—to work out the dimensions of parts, such as the thickness of a tabletop, the height of the table or the width of its apron.

Once you know what works, you can break some of the rules. Exaggerate dimensions: Design a long, narrow table or a strongly vertical chest of drawers. Instead of a progression of deepening drawers down the front of a case, add a couple of smaller ones toward the middle. Keep in mind, however, the balance of the piece. It might be solid on its feet but feel unsettling to the viewer.

Keep construction in mind

Aside from the practical dimensions that the design must accommodate, construction is another real-world consideration. The most ingenious design is no good if it's incredibly difficult to build. It's better (and more profitable) to build something simple that looks complicated, rather than something complicated that looks simple. So think about construction early in the design process.

Insight into how to design the joinery and build a piece often comes from experience—if you have it. If I had never made a gate-leg table, I'd look at as many examples as possible to see other makers' designs and solutions. There is no one way to build anything, but there are easier and harder ways to do it. Some ways are stronger, too.

Choose appropriate woods

Wood choice is both an aesthetic and technical consideration. Wood color, figure, hardness, how primary and secondary woods enhance or contrast each other, and how your wood will age are all concerns. A piece made of ash or oak, both of which have very strong grain, will be very different from the same piece made of quieter cherry or flashier bird's-eye maple. Harder woods will take fine details and hold up to wear and tear, but you may want the patina that softwoods develop with everyday use. Think through the various parts and the availability of stock wide or thick enough to make them. Of



Variations on a theme. Square pegs and rectangular wedges made of ebony work together visually in the base of a trestle table (above). A black-and-white checkered pattern is repeated in the stringing and banding on the legs of the demilune table below, and the motif is echoed in the border of the oval inlay.



course, wood selection sometimes comes down to what you have on hand or what you can get.

Get down to details

While choosing woods, refining proportions and devising construction strategies are important aspects of a design, the details are the most important—and the most elusive. These are the small touches that draw your eye and delight your senses. Some details are purely practical: a chamfer to blunt and thus protect an edge

from wear. Others are purely decorative: an inlay line around a drawer. Great details can do both; for instance, beads disguise the gap around a door, round an edge prone to wear and add a nicely

molded outline. Some designs are rich with details. Others rely on beautiful woods and surfaces alone.

The challenge is not finding details you like—they are everywhere you look—but using them in a way that enhances rather than clutters your design. Don't give your viewers so much variety that they feel confused and overwhelmed. Treat details as variations on a theme. Use similar woods, colors, patterns and repeating shapes and sizes to create unity in the piece. In a cherry

cabinet you might use dark rosewood to pin the joints on the doors, for the knobs and perhaps for cock beading on the drawers. A part of the crown molding could echo the bead shape.

Details are hard to see on paper but easy to mock up. Wondering about a molding shape or how big to make a chamfer? Go cut some. Test samples also give you practice making a difficult detail, can be sent to a client and can be saved for future reference.

Part of the thrill of making something unique is leaving some things to be discovered as you build. Give yourself the flexibility to let the design evolve. Curve an edge that was to be straight, refine a leg to a more pleasing taper, deepen a rail where you can now see you need it. Even mistakes can add something to the fun; they'll force you to come up with creative solutions you just might use again. □



Nothing like the real thing. These models of edge treatments are for the chest in the sketchbook on the facing page.

Details are hard to see on paper but easy to mock up.

GENERAL INTERNATIONAL

THE POWER OF THE GREEN MACHINE

WORKING TOGETHER

MODEL 490-1
15" WOOD CUTTING BANDSAW

MODEL 15-250
24" HORIZONTAL DOUBLE DRUM SANDER

MODEL 350-T50
10" TILTING ARBOR SAW

MODEL 40-250
HEAVY DUTY 3 HP SHAPER

FOR MORE INFORMATION VISIT OUR WEBSITE: www.general.ca

READER SERVICE NO. 165

Wood Moisture Meters

Wood moisture is a crucial factor that determines usefulness and stability of wood. Pin-type moisture testers measure surface and core moisture to avoid cracking, warping and delamination.

The versatile mini-Ligno meters from Lignomat are ideal for veneer, heavy timbers and curved plywood; a favorite for professional woodworkers and serious hobbyists. Ask about our free brochure for pin and pinless moisture meters.

800/227-2105 Lignomat USA Ltd.
503/257-8957 PO 30145, Portland OR 97294

READER SERVICE NO. 102

professional

PR.28

INVISIBLE 23 GAUGE HEADLESS PINNER
SHOOTS: 15MM (5/8") - 28MM (1 1/8")
\$279 USD

CALL FOR NEAREST DEALER
DEALER INQUIRIES WELCOME
WWW.OMERTOOLS.COM
TO ORDER CALL
TEL: 604.876.9909
FAX: 604.876.3914

OMER Direct

READER SERVICE NO. 126

Breadboard-end basics

What's the purpose behind using breadboard ends on a tabletop, and why couldn't I just biscuit-join a cap on the end? —Pat Houghton, Shreveport, La.

Michael Pekovich replies: Breadboard ends have been used traditionally to keep wide table ends flat yet also allow the top to move seasonally. The breadboard end is a dadoed end cap that is placed over tenons and secured with pins.

short stub tenon helps minimize any cupping of the tabletop.

The breadboard is glued only to the center 6 in. or so (including the center tenon), which allows the top to expand or contract independently from the breadboard. The breadboard is further secured with pegs through the tenons.

The peg holes (except for the one in the center tenon) must be elongated to allow for movement. The easiest way to do this is to dry-fit the breadboard to the top and

ship and left in storage for nine months. Her furniture is typical French style with curved sides and drawer fronts. The veneer is oak, but the specific species is unknown, and the finish is a high gloss. How do I repair this damage?

—Dale H. Coffed, Greensboro, Ga.

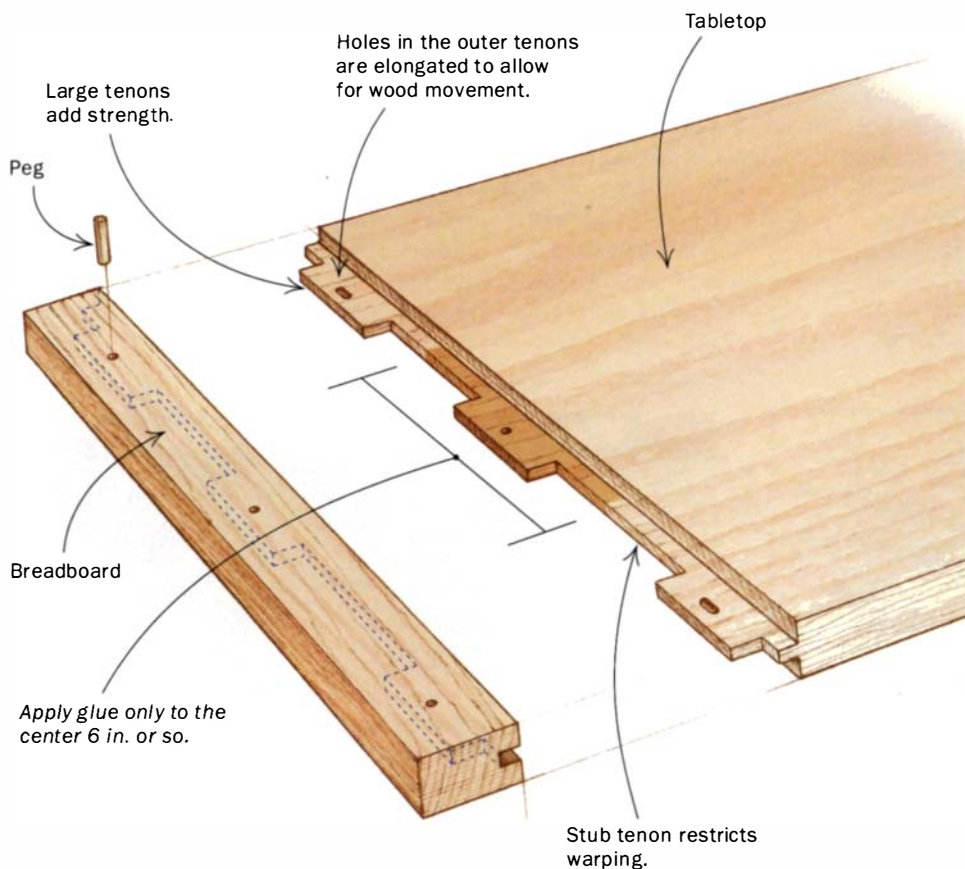
Roland Johnson replies: Repairing lifting veneer without damaging the finish is a very tough challenge. If the furniture is old (pre-World War II), the veneer is probably held in place with hide glue. Furniture in storage often experiences low humidity and fluctuations in temperature—both detrimental to hide glue. Old hide glue that has lost its adhesion can be reactivated with the application of heat and moisture. I use a damp cotton cloth and a clothes iron set at the cotton setting to heat the veneer and glue and iron it back down. The drawback with this method is that it will ruin the finish on the repaired areas.

If the glue is a modern resin glue, the only way to readhere the veneer is to puncture the blisters with either a razor knife or a syringe, squirt a tiny amount of glue under the blister and then clamp or weight the veneer to flatten it into the glue. Again, the chance of damaging the finish is high, especially a gloss finish.

For small veneer repairs, I often use cyanoacrylate glue injected through a tiny puncture or slit. Cyanoacrylate glue has a very low viscosity and tends to pull itself into tight confines, completely coating any slight separation between the veneer and the substrate. The best method to apply the glue is to place the tip of the glue bottle tightly against the puncture and slowly allow the glue to fill the bottle's tip until the glue contacts the veneer. Keep just slight pressure against the veneer, and let the glue pull itself into the void. The glue has a short drying time, so you can hold the veneer in place by hand, eliminating the need for clamps or weights. Cyanoacrylate glue will eat into a finish quickly, so again the risk of damaging the finish is high.

Keep in mind that resin glue will not adhere to hide glue. Resin glue would be a temporary fix at best if the veneer were attached with hide glue. Cyanoacrylate glue seems to adhere to any

DESIGNING TRADITIONAL BREADBOARD ENDS



Biscuits would work fine if you were attaching breadboard ends to something stable such as plywood. But solid wood can move quite a bit with the seasonal changes in humidity, so a different method of attachment is necessary.

A traditional method, and the one I like to use, involves joining the breadboard to the tabletop with a series of tenons connected by a continuous stub tenon. The longer tenons (usually three or five but always odd in number) offer support when lifting the table by its ends. The

drill for the pegs. Then remove the breadboard and elongate the holes in the tenons with a file before gluing and pegging the breadboard in place. [Michael Pekovich is the art director and a furniture maker.]

How to fix veneer blisters in old furniture

A client of mine recently found pea-sized blisters popping up on her veneered furniture. The pieces had been sent to the United States from France in a cargo

COMPLETE SAWMILL FOR UNDER \$3000

CALL 1-877-LOGOSOL
FOR FREE VIDEO

www.logosol.com

LOGOSOL

READER SERVICE NO. 164

General
10" Table Saw
100% North
American
Made

**Call For
SPECIAL PRICING**



FREE
Table Board, Leg Set
& Carbide Blade

More General Machinery

- 15" Band Saw (#490-1) 1HPCall
- 12" Lathe (#160-2) 1HPCall
- 12" HD Lathe (#260-VD)Call
- 8" Jointer (#480-1)Call
- 6" Jointer (#1180-1) 1HPCall
- 15" Drill Press (#34-01)Call
- 14" Planer (#130-1) 3HPCall
- 20" HD Lathe (#26020-VD)Call



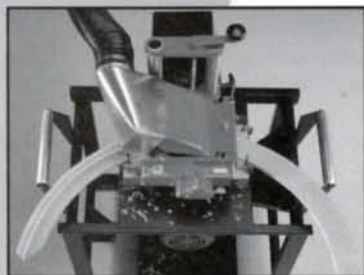
2625 Beaver Avenue, Des Moines, IA 50310

1-800-835-5084

http://www.augusthome.com

READER SERVICE NO. 16

The Ultimate Molder!



- Straight, Round, Elliptical
- Simple, Easy, Safe
- 100 Standard Knives
- Custom Knives Available
- Quality Construction
- Made in the USA



**Williams & Hussey
Machine Co., Inc.**

800.258.1380 (USA)
603.654.6828

Visit us online at
www.williamsnhussey.com

READER SERVICE NO. 141

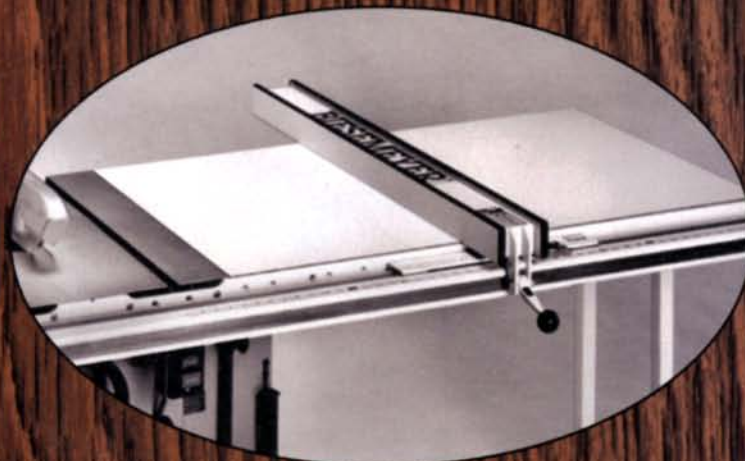
Groff & Groff Lumber
*Exceptionally Fine
Furniture & Instrument
Grade Woods*

PREMIUM WALNUT, CHERRY, CURLY CHERRY,
BIRDSEYE AND TIGER MAPLE
Sawmill Direct • Slabs to 40" Wide
75+ Unusual Native & Imported Species
Matching Flitches • Burls & Turning Blocks
Order 75 Domestic and Imported Species 4/4 - 16/4
Custom Flooring & Wainscoting
Reclaimed Pine & Chestnut
No Order Too Large or Too Small
858 Scotland Road, Quarryville, PA 17566
1-800-342-0001
(717) 284-0001 • Fax (717) 284-2400

National & International Shipping

READER SERVICE NO. 70

BIESEMEYER®



A Legend In It's Own Time

Disneyland, the Smithsonian Institution, NBC Studios... what do they have in common? They all feature a Biesemeyer® fence in their wood shops.

When you're ready to build an heirloom for your family, start with the fence system that has made history in American woodworking shops for generations. Select the proven leader... Biesemeyer®.

Tested, Tried and True

Contact us or visit our web site
for the name of our distributor nearest you.

BIESEMEYER®

216 S. Alma School Road • Suite 3 • Mesa, AZ 85210

Fax (480) 834-8515

1-800-782-1831

Web Site: www.biesemeyer.com • E-Mail: mail@biesemeyer.com

READER SERVICE NO. 176

glue, so if you're unsure of the original adhesive, cyanoacrylate would be the best glue to use.

[Roland Johnson is a furniture maker in Sauk Rapids, Minn.]

Problems with a burl turning

The bowl I turned from a black walnut burl has some checks in it. Should I close these? If so, what should I use?

—Robert M. Eldon, Phoenix, Ariz.

Richard Raffan replies: Depending on the size of the checks, you have several options. Very small end-grain splits typically resulting from aggressive sanding are best hand-sanded until the surface feels smooth.

Larger, more obvious splits can be filled with dust, shavings and cyanoacrylate glue and accelerant (see the photos at right). First squirt cyanoacrylate accelerant into the gap to be filled. Then pack dust and/or shavings tightly into the gap using some sort of ramming device. I use old dental tools, but small, wedge-shaped offcuts do just as well.

Next, add a few drops of cyanoacrylate glue and spray with accelerant. The resin instantly percolates the packed dust and shavings, and the accelerant causes it to set rapidly from all sides in about two seconds. Finally, scrape and sand the excess fill until it is smooth and level with the surrounding surface.

To disguise large splits along the grain, use a few long, fat shavings or even wood slivers aligned with the grain and packed in fine dust.

Larger splits can be a design opportunity ready for dramatization, especially if they allow you to see through the bowl wall. By sanding the splits smooth and rounding the edges, you can create an asset from a defect.

Splits across the grain are more difficult to hide, so consider making a feature of them using a contrasting dust or even some color. If you like the idea of bright color, use powdered paint mixed with epoxy resin. A contrasting wood dust and cyanoacrylate glue make



REPAIRING CHECKS

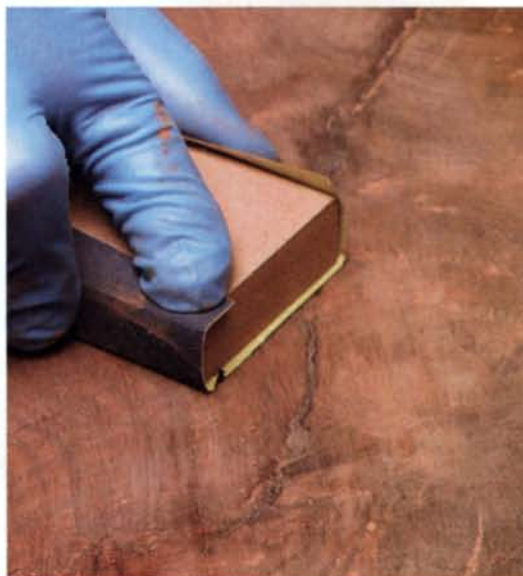
Small cracks can be filled with cyanoacrylate glue and sawdust.



Spray cyanoacrylate accelerant into the gap. This prepares the check for a fast-drying repair.



Pack, fill, spray. Fill the gap with sawdust using a wedge of wood to pack it down (left). Add several drops of cyanoacrylate glue (middle), then spray accelerant on top of that (right). The accelerant hardens the glue instantly, making it ready to be worked.



Scrape and sand until the surface is smooth and level. After the cyanoacrylate glue has dried, sand to a smooth finish. Wipe with a solvent to check the fit of the repair.

Quick and to the Point.



Delmhorst – the most trusted name in moisture meters – introduces **Accuscan™** a pinless moisture meter for all your woodworking needs.

- ▶ Measure incoming stock to ensure quality from a supplier.
- ▶ Check moisture in finished products quickly and without penetrating the surface.
- ▶ Minimize defects such as splits and cracks.

Use **Accuscan** with our proven **J-Series** pin-type meters and you have the best of both worlds – the pin-point accuracy to check core moisture levels and the quick scanning ability of a pinless meter. No two instruments give you the fast results and accurate readings woodworkers demand.

DELMHORST
INSTRUMENT CO.

WHEN ACCURACY IS THE POINT.
1-800-222-0638 www.delmhorst.com

© 2001 Delmhorst Instrument Co.

READER SERVICE NO. 93

Enjoy the benefits of HVLP with a FUJI!



Introducing the new Q3™ and Q4™ Quiet models.

First ever in the mid-price range. Noise reduced by over 50% for a more relaxed spraying environment. Systems also include the new Fuji Hi-Flex™ Rubber Hose.

FUJI
INDUSTRIAL SPRAY
EQUIPMENT LTD.

- High transfer efficiency
- Soft, easy to control spray
- Compact and portable

Dealer Inquiries Welcome • 800-650-0930 • Website: www.fujispray.com

READER SERVICE NO. 67



The Thomas Chippendale School of Furniture

Scotland's leading independent furniture school. We offer courses geared toward designing and making exhibition-quality fine furniture. You will be taught in a commercial studio that produces fine furniture for galleries and private clients. Attend our 30 week intensive career course in the heart of the Scottish countryside or our 16 week intensive career course in the Pacific Northwest.

We are proud to announce the opening of our new sister school in Oregon, USA offering long & short courses with our visiting British instructors

- Veneering
- Carving • Gilding
- Hand Joinery • Bowl Turning
- Restoration & Conservation
- English Windsor Chair Making

For more information call

Scotland: 011 44 1620 810 680

Oregon: (541) 484-3811

www.chippendale-schools.com

www.chippendale.co.uk/

READER SERVICE NO. 151

YORKCRAFT®

The perfect union of quality with low price!



YC-19FDP

DRILL PRESS – 3/4 hp motor. 5/8" drill chuck and arbor. Work light. Quick adjust lever for belt tensioning. 14" swing. 12 speeds: 140 to 3050 RPM. Cast iron construction. **\$259.00**

8" JOINTER – 1-1/2 hp motor. 3-knife cutterhead with jackscrew knife adjustment. Heavy duty, center-mounted fence. Extra-long 72" table. Enclosed stand. 4" dia. dust collection outlet. **\$649.00**

YC-8J

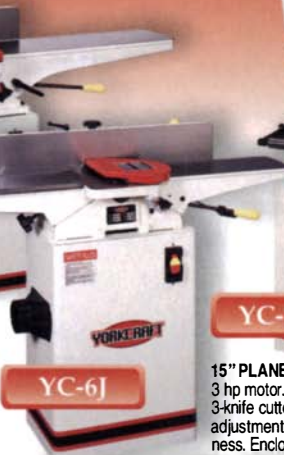


YC-900WL

WOOD LATHE – 1/2 hp motor. Steel stand. Cast iron bed. 36" between centers. Spur center. 12" swing. 12" tool rest. 6" dia. faceplate. Variable speed: 600 to 2400 RPM. **\$259.00**

6" JOINTER – 1 hp motor. 3-knife cutterhead with jackscrew knife adjustment. Heavy duty, center-mounted fence. Enclosed stand. 4" dia. dust collection outlet. **\$329.00**

YC-6J



YC-15P

15" PLANER – 3 hp motor. 2 speeds: 16 and 30 FPM. 3-knife cutterhead with jackscrew knife adjustment. Planes 15" wide x 6" thickness. Enclosed stand. **\$699.00**



YC-015A

DUST COLLECTOR – Compact and portable. 1 hp motor. Max 500 CFM. Two 4" dia. inlets. 18 gal collection bag. **\$139.00**

WILKE
MACHINERY COMPANY
MACHINERY POWER TOOLS

For information and a **FREE** catalog contact us by toll free phone:

1-800-235-2100

visit our web page:

www.wilkemach.com

write or visit our showroom: 3230 N Susquehanna Trail, York, PA 17402-9716



Shipped: FOB, York, PA
Prices subject to change without notice.

READER SERVICE NO. 185

a more subtle effect. I keep jars of fine dust pulverized in a coffee blender for this purpose. I favor African blackwood and cocobolo dust, both of which set very quickly, even without an accelerant.

[Richard Raffan is a professional wood turner in the Far South Coast of New South Wales, Australia. He has written several books for The Taunton Press.]

Lightening the stain of an antique

We inherited a number of production pieces of furniture, probably from the 1940s, which all have a dark stain. We would like to lighten them. Please tell us

the best way to turn dark-stained furniture into light-stained furniture.

—*Sylvia and Joseph Franklin, Richmond, Va.*

Jeff Jewitt replies: Aside from painting, there is no way to lighten dark furniture without stripping it down to bare wood and refinishing. There are four steps to refinishing. Remove the finish, sand and repair the surface, color it and then apply the finish.

Furniture from the 1940s is probably lacquer, and old lacquer strips easily. You can use any commercially available stripper or pay someone to do it. You'd be surprised how cheap a pro can do it compared with the time and money you'd invest in the same activity.

Also, be sure to neutralize the stripper. I use lacquer thinner. After the wood is dry, sand it. If the surface is badly damaged, start with 120 grit and go up to 180 grit. If it's not damaged, a light 180 grit will suffice.

Deep gouges and missing wood should be repaired with putty or real wood. I always try to replace wood with wood (such as veneer chips and small pieces of molding). To remove dents and small dings, you can use steam from a wet rag heated with the tip of an iron.

Now wet the wood with mineral spirits. If the color is right, go onto finishing. If the wood is still too dark, you will have to lighten it with chlorine bleach to remove dye stains. If it's too light you will have to stain it the color that you like. Most likely, some parts of the piece may be of a secondary wood, such as poplar or maple, and stained and glazed to match the primary woods used on the top and sides. If this is the case, seal the secondary wood with a thin coat of finish, then wipe on different-color pigment stains to simulate the color of the primary wood. This is a technique called glazing (See *FWW* #148, pp. 48-49).

Now finish with the topcoat of your choice. The closest to the factory original

will be nitrocellulose lacquer, but shellac and oil-based varnish will work as well. [Jeff Jewitt is a frequent contributor to *Fine Woodworking* on finish-related topics.]

Making tack rags

Tack rags are very useful for removing sanding dust before I spray a finish on my work. But I use them continually, which makes them expensive. Do you have a recipe to make tack rags?

—*Dave Bell, Cox's Bay Auckland, New Zealand*

Chris Minick replies: To make your own tack rags, here is an age-old formula. In a clean 1-gal. bucket, add 2 oz. or 3 oz. (four to six tablespoons) of a slow-drying alkyd varnish to one pint turpentine. Stir this mixture until homogeneous, then add about ½ yard of lint-free, open-weave cheesecloth. Once saturated, remove the cheesecloth and squeeze out as much of the liquid as possible. The objective is to end up with a rag that is slightly sticky but will not leave any residue on the surface. The leftover liquid can be stored in a tightly sealed jar for future use.

Homemade varnish-based tack rags have some limitations not found in commercial rags. First, spontaneous combustion is a real hazard and should not be taken lightly. Store the used rag in a small, tightly sealed jar to minimize the hazard. Better yet, after use, lay the unfolded rag on the shop floor to dry, then dispose of it in the trash. Tack rags by their nature leave a small amount of contamination on the wiped surface. Varnish-based tack rags are okay for varnished surfaces; however, they may cause adhesion problems when used between coats of solvent-based lacquer, and fisheyes when used with water-based finishes. Given these limitations, plus the hassles of making your own, I think buying commercially prepared automotive-grade tack rags is a wise choice.

[Chris Minick is a consulting editor.]

Sticker-stain blues

I have some bad sticker stain in some myrtle that I am air-drying. Should I be using a special type of wood for stickers, and is there any way to lift the stain or



From dark to light. By using a stripper, a darkly stained piece (left) can be lightened (center). If an even lighter tone is desired, the piece may be bleached (right).

Build Your Own Corporate Ladder.

We can supply the right tools.



Become a Woodcraft Franchise Owner.

Owning your own business can be empowering, especially when power tools are involved. Turn your love for woodworking into a dynamic investment by becoming a Woodcraft retail store franchise owner. Contact us soon. Opportunities are limited.

To find out more contact:
Bill Carroll
Director of Franchise Operations
bill_carroll@woodcraft.com
304-422-5412
F02WW05Q



WOODCRAFT
Helping You Make Wood Work®

1177 Rosemar Road, P.O. Box 245
Parkersburg, WV 26102-0245

RAZOR SAW
It cuts FASTER! EASIER! MORE ACCURATELY!

Order now, only \$25.95 post paid!
Craftsmen around the world have discovered the secret of better quality work. The Razor Saw cuts by pulling, and will give a cleaner, more accurate cut in half the time.

Purchase a RAZOR SAW now and we will include our 72 page catalog of the world's finest woodworking tools. Or send \$3.00 for a two year subscription to our Catalog.

The Best handsaw for ALL woodworkers!
www.japanwoodworker.com
Dept D2

THE JAPAN WOODWORKER

1731 Clement Ave. • Alameda, CA 94501 • 1-800-537-7820

READER SERVICE NO. 17

Quality Pen Kits and Other Turning Kits



• Designers & Manufacturers • Wholesale & Retail

THE BereaHardWoods CO. Inc.

Manufacturer of quality writing instruments, components and kits.

CALL FOR FREE CATALOG

6367 Eastland Rd. • Brookpark, Ohio 44142 U.S.A.

Ph: 440-234-7949 • Fax: 440-234-7958 • bereahard@aol.com

www.bereahardwoods.com

READER SERVICE NO. 14

THE WORLD'S BEST ROUTER JOINERY JIGS BY LEIGH



The Rout Stuff.

D4 Dovetail Features:

- Infinite spacing of pins and tails
- Through dovetails up to 1 1/4" thick
- Half-blind dovetails up to 1 1/2" thick
- Sliding dovetails up to 1 1/2" thick
- All three can be cut in boards up to 24" wide
- Imperial or metric measurement scales

Comes standard with:

- Two cutters for 1/2" to 3/4" through dovetails
- 168-page fully illustrated User Guide
- D4 Dovetail Jig Instructional Video
- Cam-Action Speed-Clamps
- Adjustable side stop for angled dovetails



Router not included

Leigh Joinery Jigs have it all. Hobbyist or professional, the Leigh D4 Dovetail Jig will ensure you create your best work. Versatility, precision and superb value make the Leigh Dovetail Jig better than the rest. Rout through and half-blind dovetails, with variable spacing of pins and tails, on one jig. Create decorative Isoloc joints, finger joints, and multiple mortise & tenons effortlessly with Leigh attachments and our exceptional user guides! Get the right stuff for the job. Call toll free now!

Call For Your FREE Leigh Catalog Today! 1-800-663-8932

LEIGH
Joining Tradition With Today

Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357
Port Coquitlam, BC Canada V3C 4K6
Toll free 1-800-663-8932 Tel. 604 464-2700
Fax 604 464-7404 Web www.leighjigs.com

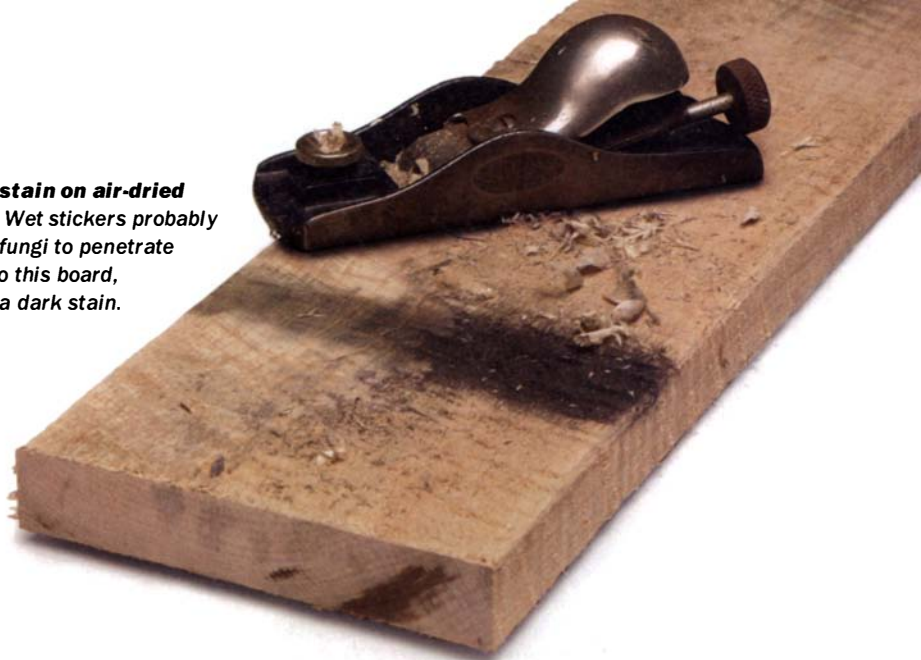
cover it up? Milling and planing is not an option.

—Bud Tippet, Rogue River, Ore.

Jon Arno replies: Sticker stain is usually caused by moisture trapped between the sticker and the surface of the lumber, which allows fungi to get established. The species of wood used for stickers is less important than making sure that the stickers have very low moisture content, preferably kiln-dried stock. There is also such a thing as chemical stain, which comes from stickers that are of a species that contains water-soluble (fugitive) pigments or a natural chemistry that might interact with the species being dried. These are usually acid or base interactions, but I can't recall reading any research that thoroughly covers this latter topic to the point of defining what species combinations to avoid.

As for helping you with your staining problem, I'm afraid you're sheets-to-the-wind on this one. It sounds like you used wet stickers and the stain is caused by

Sticker stain on air-dried lumber. Wet stickers probably allowed fungi to penetrate deep into this board, causing a dark stain.



deeply embedded fungi (i.e., virtually indelible). Strong bleach (oxalic acid) not only lightens the stain, but it also removes pigments from the wood. Bleach might help on a wood like holly or maybe even maple, when you want to achieve an almost white color anyway, but with myrtle you want to retain its natural gray-brown pigmentation. If milling and

planing are not options, I suspect you now have a load of roof boards. Wish I could offer more positive feedback. [Jon Arno is a wood technologist.]

Send your questions to Q & A, Fine Woodworking, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506 or e-mail it to fwqa@taunton.com.



EuroShop

Fine European Woodworking Machinery

- 7 Models Available from 16" to 36"
- Resaw Capacities from 10" to 21.5"
- Electronically Balanced Cast Iron Wheels
- Cold Vulcanized Tires
- High Rigidity Frames
- Foot Brake with Micro Switch

"This is a truly great tool. It's amazing how little adjustment it needs once you do the initial set up".
— Mark Duginske, author "The Bandsaw Handbook"



EAGLE TOOLS

2217 El Sol Avenue
Altadena, CA 91001
800-203-0023
www.eagle-tools.com

Fine Woodworking Machinery & Tools Since 1988

READER SERVICE NO. 61

MARC ADAMS

School of Woodworking SUMMER 2002

Send For Our Complete Class Brochure Or Visit Our Website
www.marcadams.com

INSTRUCTORS INCLUDE:
Graham Blackburn • Allan Breed
Paul Schurch • Craig Stevens
Lon Schleining • Kelly Mehler
Bob Flexner • Mario Rodriguez
Thomas Lie Nielsen • Yeung Chan
Michael Fortune • Frank Pollaro
Wayne Burton • John Economaki
Garrett Hack and many more!

MASW
5504 E, 500 N,
Franklin, IN 46131
Call to find out more about our Masters and Apprenticeship Programs!



SCHOOL OF WOODWORKING
marc ADAMS

Courses run May thru October,
Week Long and Weekend Workshops
Call for reservations NOW!
Lodging is available nearby.
Scholarships Available

HANDS-ON COURSES:
Cabinet Making
Carving • Chair Making
Finishing • Furniture Making
Joinery • Turning
Veneering & Marquetry
and MUCH MORE!

1-317-535-4013
FAX 317-535-1713

READER SERVICE NO. 68

The Custom Cabinet Sourcebook

CALL FOR ENTRIES

Do you build kitchen cabinets professionally?

The Taunton Press is planning to publish a sourcebook of independent cabinetmakers whose work shows good design and solid craftsmanship. To participate you must have been a professional cabinetmaker for at least two years and you must supply 4-8 publishable photos. All submissions will be judged by a panel of professional woodworkers. There is no charge to enter or to be included in the directory, if accepted.

Call or email now for an entry package.

The deadline for submissions has been extended to May 31, 2002.

Independent Cabinetmakers

Books Department, The Taunton Press
63 South Main Street, Newtown, CT 06470

or at cabinetmakers@taunton.com.

You may also call (800) 926-8776 x514.



The Taunton Press
Inspiration for hands-on living™

Adams Wood Products™
LTD., LP.

**STOCK ITEMS
NO MINIMUM ORDERS**
-OR-
WE WILL MAKE PRODUCTION RUNS OF YOUR PART

By American Craftsmen

CHAIR LEGS
ACR08 AM08

BUN LEGS
A0556

FINIALS
A0851

913 LEGS

FR STYLE QUEEN ANNE LEGS

113 REEBED BASE W/206 LEG

404 CHAIR KITS

P.O. Box 728, Dept. Q36
Morristown, TN 37815-0728
Phone 423-587-2942 • Fax 423-586-2188
www.adamswoodproducts.com

FREE COLOR CATALOG

READER SERVICE NO. 103

Incro MITER5000

- 364 Indexed Angle Stops over $\pm 90^\circ$
- 36-64" Miter Fence + Dual-Flip Stop
- Steel GlideLOCK™ Miter Bar with 10 Width Adjustment Points
- Integral Hold-down Clamping System
- Renewable Zero Clearance Right Panel

SALE \$299

Produce perfect gap-free hairline glue joints on the mitered corners of any multi-sided object with the convenience of a sled attachment.

Woodpeckers Inc. www.woodpeck.com 1-800-752-0725
The Incra Tool Source

Beauty & Tone
at its Finest

BUILD A GUITAR
~Fine Woods & Tools for Guitarbuilders~

LMI
Luthiers Mercantile International
www.lmii.com • 800-477-4437 • Free Catalog

READER SERVICE NO. 106

FREE TOOL CATALOG

Visit us on the internet at
highlandhardware.com

highland hardware
TOOLS FOR WOODWORKING

Our comprehensive tool catalog gives you more than just manufacturer's specs. We provide detailed tool descriptions, useful tips & techniques and a schedule of seminars & hands-on workshops.

**CALL FOR FREE TOOL CATALOG
1-888-500-4466**

READER SERVICE NO. 98

SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS

- Square Drive Beats Driver Bit Slippage
- Hardened Steel for Extra Strength
- Deep Thread for Super Grip
- Stocking Over 750 Sizes & Styles

McFEELY'S
SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS

PO Box 11169 • Lynchburg • VA 24506
www.mcfeelys.com or 1-800-443-7937

READER SERVICE NO. 107

**To PIN...
... or NOT to PIN?**
WE HAVE THE ANSWER!

TWO-WAY MOISTURE METER
... PIN-TYPE OR PINLESS
INSTANT PUSHBUTTON SELECTION
WIDE RANGE 0% - 99% DIGITAL
WOOD SPECIES COMPENSATION
NEW DUAL-MODE MODEL CMT-908
... ASK FOR FREE CATALOG OF
ALL OUR MOISTURE METERS

END WOOD WARPING NIGHTMARES
PIN-TYPE & PINLESS MOISTURE METERS FROM \$69
www.electrophysics.on.ca

Electrophysics
1-800-244-9908

Box 1143, Station B
London, Ontario
Canada N6A 5K2

"Imagination Not Included"

With over 50 years of experience, MiniMax offers the CU 300 Smart Combination machine. We give you endless creative ability by putting quality and power at your fingertips.

CU-300 Smart

- 3-4.8HP motors
- 12" Table Saw w/ Scoring
- 5" Sliding Table Stroke
- 4-Speed Shaper w/ Interchangeable spindle
- 12" Jointer/Planer w/ Torsa Cutterhead
- Cast-iron Mortiser
- Mobility kit

Optional:
Tilting Shaper
8" Slider
16" Jointer/Planer

A Wealth of Knowledge
Made Affordable

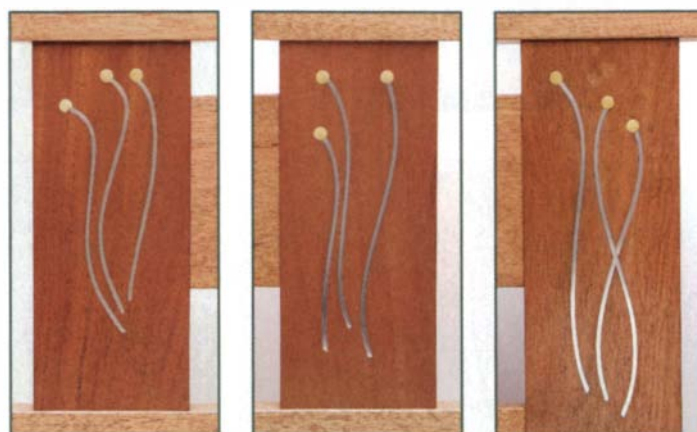
**For Info
Call NOW**

Call Toll Free!
866-WRK-WOOD
(975-9663)

MiniMax
2012 Centimeter Circle
Austin, TX 78758

READER SERVICE NO. 153

Silver inlay adds refinement to an Arts and Crafts bed



When is a piece of furniture more than a piece of furniture? The answer is when it sings, when it shows the handwork and detailing of a careful craftsman. The details of a piece can make or break it, separating fine

furniture from run-of-the-mill work.

The bed project in this issue (pp. 44-51) can be further refined with silver inlay. The stylized floral inlay fits the Arts and Crafts idiom, but it also just looks good. A bed headboard, with its wide spaces, provides a broad canvas for embellishment.

I'm a sucker for the Scotch. Not the 16-year-old kind, although that is nice, but the 100-year-old work of Charles Rennie Mackin-

tosh. His design work in furniture, architecture and fabrics is a fascinating mixture of geometric shapes and naturalism. Strong tapering shapes are accented with stylized flowers, stalks, seed heads and willowy waving-in-the-wind shapes. The floral patterns that occur regularly in his very masculine work gave me the inspiration to combine

the heft of the bed with a series of waving stalks in the headboard and footboard. The 1/8-in.-square sterling-silver wire cost about \$1 an inch, or about \$100 total for the four columns on this bed.

Four columns, four slightly different designs

My design process started with a series of small, rough sketches on brown kraft paper—an effort to get the flavor before deciding on exact shapes or sizes. The idea of early sketches is to play with ideas and shapes without constraints. For one thing, try not to criticize your drawing skills. This stage can take several hours or several weeks as you try new shapes or proportions, searching for the right combination.

Next I started working to scale. I cut the paper to the exact size of the column. After hours of drawing practice, the lines flowed

BEGIN WITH SKETCHES



Rough sketches, with an emphasis on creativity and freedom, coalesce into a series of variations on a theme. Then the best of these are drawn as full-scale patterns. To see how the patterns work with each other and with the bed, Rogowski tapes them in place on the actual piece during the dry-fit stage.



www.routerbits.com

Whiteside Router Bits
Systematic Saw Blades
Fisch Forstner Bits
HTC Mobile Bases



Router Bits on the Web

READER SERVICE NO. 9



NOW YOU
CAN ORDER
ON-LINE!

- Oxford Premium Spray Lacquers
- Oxford Hybrid Varnishes
- Oxford Polyurethanes
- Homestead Dyes
- Mirka Abrasives
- Spray Equipment
- Polishing Materials

or call 1-800-752-9922

www.targetcoatings.com

READER SERVICE NO. 37

Heavy Glass Table Tops

FACTORY
DIRECT
DISCOUNT
PRICING



- Table tops
- Shelves
- Doors
- Display Cases
- Entertainment Centers
- Tempered Glass

TABLE
TOPS

BY PHONE
SATISFACTION
GUARANTEED!

WGB ■ SHAPES ■ THICKNESSES ■ EDGE DESIGNS

Use Reader Service For FREE Catalog

SALES 1-800-288-6854

READER SERVICE NO. 57

SUPERSHOP 10-IN-1 WOOD & METAL SHOP

BECOME A BETTER WOODWORKER
GUARANTEED!!

You'll make projects with higher
QUALITY, PRECISION,
SPEED & SKILL



Call Today for your
FREE report!

- New, different & BETTER than "lookalike" machines
- 10 most-used tools in 1 for ultimate versatility
- Premium quality makes it an outstanding value
- Rock-solid 450 lbs., 2.5 times MORE than others
- State-of-the-art ELECTRONIC speed controls
- 30-Day RISK FREE & Industry-Leading Warranty

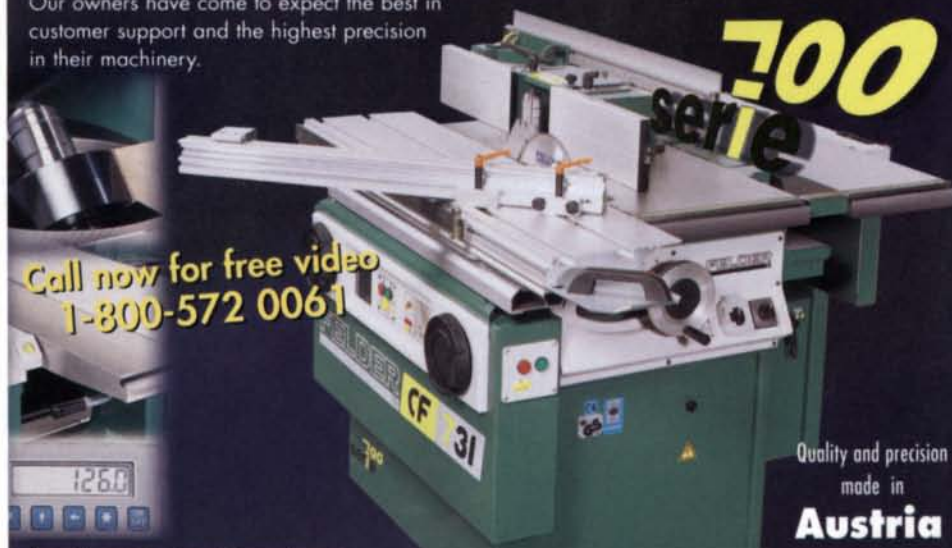
1-800-476-4849

Ask for operator FWW

READER SERVICE NO. 111

The NEW Series 700 from the Worldwide Leader of Combination Machines

The new Series 700 woodworking systems are timeless and captivating. Our owners have come to expect the best in customer support and the highest precision in their machinery.



Call now for free video
1-800-572 0061

700
serie

Quality and precision
made in
Austria

FELDER

www.felderusa.com

FELDER USA West • 1851 Enterprise Blvd. • West Sacramento, CA 95691

FELDER USA East • 2 Mc Cullough Drive • New Castle, DE 19720

Call 916-375-3190 • Fax 916-375-3194

COMBINATION MACHINES • SHAPERS • JOINTERS • PLANERS • SLIDING TABLE SAWS

READER SERVICE NO. 205

The Toughest Glue On Planet Earth

You're beyond simple yellow glues and you don't want a different bottle of glue for every project. You want Gorilla Glue®. Bonds wood, stone, metal, ceramic, plastics and more. Incredibly strong and 100% waterproof.



for retailers near you:
www.gorillaglue.com
1-800-966-3458

READER SERVICE NO. 124

ROUT FOR THE INLAY



One template for each stalk. Transfer each stalk shape onto 1/4-in.-thick MDF. Bandsaw the template edge, then drum-sand to the line. After drilling for the seed heads, tape down the pattern, allowing the necessary offset for the template guide bushing.



from my pencil. I isolated the patterns I liked, then worked out the sizes of the circles at the top of the stalks.

I cut out these paper columns and taped them to the bed to see how the patterns looked in place.

When I had four slightly different patterns I liked, I used carbon paper to trace the designs onto 1/4-in.-thick medium-density fiberboard (MDF). I cut the shapes on the bandsaw, then smoothed the curves with a drum sander. Each stalk needs its own router template, but I used the same stalk shape in a few different patterns to reduce the number of templates.

Template-routing the grooves

Curved inlay can be done with wood, but I wanted silver wire for this design for its luster, color and, I hoped, flexibility. Also, 8-gauge square wire matched pretty closely a 1/8-in. router bit, so I could rout all of the shapes using templates.

I mounted my smallest template guide in the router base and used a 1/8-in., down-spiral bit (to minimize tearout). I made a practice workpiece in mahogany to try the routing process.

Before routing I drilled out the seed-head circles with a 3/8-in. brad-point bit about 3/16 in. deep. Then I attached the templates with double-stick tape, not clamps, which would have gotten in the router's way. Next, I determined the proper offset for the tem-

plate that would center the inlay groove on the seed-head hole. I marked this offset onto my workpieces for each groove.

This inlay would be done on workpieces I had already mortised and tenoned. Any mistakes would cost time and money. So I used double-stick tape to attach some 1/4-in.-thick MDF shims onto the bottom of my router base to keep it level while cutting. The shims were the same thickness as the template, and they rode the workpiece to prevent the router from tipping and ruining the groove.

I began my routing at the seed head and moved to the right, allowing the cutting action to draw the router and the template guide toward the template. I had marked the end point of each stalk with a perpendicular line that I could see through the router base. I set the depth at slightly less than 1/8 in. to leave the wire about 1/4 in. proud. With the routing complete, I chiseled out the ends of the grooves. I angled each one slightly to give the sense of cut flowers, or maybe just because it looked good.



Start inside the seed-head area and move from left to right. The cutting action will keep the guide snug against the template. Tape pieces of MDF onto the base to keep the router level.

Cutting and placing the silver

Next I had to see how the silver worked. I learned how to anneal (soften) it from a friend who's a jewelry smith, but the wire was flexible enough already. But I had to avoid working it so much that it became work-hardened. If you do need to anneal your silver, lay it on a cinder block and heat it evenly with a torch until the silver glows dull red. Annealing will leave a dull film on the silver that can be sanded and polished off. To

Use a mortising chisel to finish the ends of the grooves. Rogowski cut each end at a slightly different angle, then sawed and filed the silver inlay to match.



HIDA JAPANESE TOOL. INC. www.hidatool.com



20th Anniversary SALE

Sale begins May 1st thru May 31st.
Visit our website at
www.hidatool.com

Hida Tool & Hardware Inc.
1333 San Pablo Ave.
Berkeley, CA 94702

510-524-3700 1-800-443-5512

READER SERVICE NO. 190



ROSEWOOD STUDIO

Instruction in fine woodworking techniques.

Located in Almonte; a quiet country town just outside Ottawa,
Canada's Capital City. Visit our web site for additional courses.

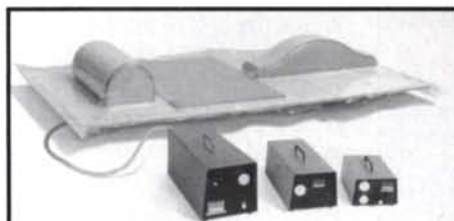
2002 WORKSHOPS

Advanced Furniture Techniques · Michael Fortune
Basic Woodworking · Ted Brown
Solid Wood Furniture · Chris Becksvort
Making Furniture with Hand Tools · Garrett Hack
Marquetry · Julie Godfrey
Chair Design/Making · Robert Van Norman
Stringed Instrument Making · Philip Davis
Decorative Boxes · Robert Van Norman
12 Week Intensive Course · 4 Instructors

For more information contact:
Local Calls: 1-613-256-8900
E-mail: info@rosewoodstudio.com
Website: www.rosewoodstudio.com
Location: 83 Little Bridge St.,
Almonte, Ontario, Canada. K0A 1A0

Call TOLL FREE 1-866-704-7778 for a free brochure & course calendar

READER SERVICE NO. 65



VENEERING and CLAMPING with VACUUM

VACUUM PRESSING SYSTEMS, INC.
553 RIVER ROAD
BRUNSWICK, MAINE 04011
207-725-0935 / FAX 207-725-0932
VIDEO AVAILABLE

The leader in vacuum technology
for woodworking offers a
complete line of innovative
products for:

- VENEERING
- LAMINATING
- CLAMPING

NEW products include:
FlipTop Frame Presses,
Inflatable Bladders
and Videos

READER SERVICE NO. 7

Go online for product information

Find our advertisers' web sites
quickly and easily on
our online Advertiser Index at

www.finewoodworking.com

Fine
WoodWorking

**Dovetail your next
drawer – in less
than 10 minutes...**

including setup!

**only with the Keller
Dovetail System.**

*All other jigs require endless
test cuts and wasted wood.*

The Keller Dovetail System is
very different: it is easy, quick,
accurate and versatile.

Cut unlimited widths. Classic and variable
spacing. Angled and curved dovetails. Box
joints. Projects from jewelry boxes to enter-
tainment centers. 20-yr warranty.

VIDEO: \$8.95 + \$2 P/H

KELLER & CO. Dept. F52
1327 'I' Street, Petaluma, CA 94952
(800) 995-2456 (707) 763-9336
www.kellerdovetail.com

**The Keller
Dovetail System**
Simply the best.



READER SERVICE NO. 72

Taking Band Saws to New Levels



Editors Choice Award
winning Band Saws are
designed by Laguna Tools
and imported from Italy.

- Industry specifications
- Cast-iron flywheels
- Wider blades
- Euro guides
- Meets tough dust standards
- Quiet, powerful, smooth
and made in Italy
- Robot welded steel frame
- More resaw height
- Rack and Pinion
- Easy blade change
- Mobility kit available
- Order a custom made
band saw

Free Video

17101 Murphy Ave.
Irvine, CA 92614
(949) 474-1200

LAGUNA TOOLS
Fine European Woodworking Machinery
800-234-1976

www.lagunatools.com
E-mail:
mail@lagunatools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 209

INLAY THE WIRE



Prebend the wire. Rout the pattern into a scrap hardwood block. Then pound in the silver slowly, bending it as you go. Next, set the silver into the actual workpiece and mark where it meets the seed head. Carefully remove the silver and trim it to length.



With a few router passes under my belt, I took on the real column. I drilled and marked it out, then routed the groove. I then worked the silver into the groove up to the round seed head. There, I marked the outline of the circle onto the silver.

To cut the inlay to length, I removed it carefully from the workpiece. With a knife edge on the bottom edge of the silver and a pad of laminate underneath the knife to protect the wood, I was able to pry up the silver without tearing up the edges of the groove.

I filed the top end of the wire as closely as I could to the curved shape of the seed head. Then it was time to epoxy the silver in place. I put enough epoxy in the groove to coat the walls lightly, figuring that any extra would get pushed into the bottom of the groove. I used a deadblow hammer, then C-clamps and blocks of MDF to drive the silver wire fully into its groove and hold it there. With slow-setting epoxy, I had time to clean up most of the squeeze-out using a rag dampened with vinegar.

Final details

I let the epoxy set up and cleaned up the rest of the squeeze-

out. In the seed-head hole at the top of the inlay, epoxy had pooled. I also had a bit more shaping to do to the end of the wire to make it match the round edge of the seed head that was going in next. I used a rotary tool with a small cutting burr to clean up the epoxy and shape the end of the wire. I also used a round file here.

The silver wire was left slightly higher than the wood. I rounded over it with 220-grit sandpaper followed by 400 grit and a final polishing with 0000 steel wool. This gave the silver an even, burnished look.

I decided the seed head would look good in yellow-heart, so I cut out some $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. tapered plugs on the drill press. I glued in each plug, then sanded it using 220-grit paper to give it its final look: slightly domed and raised, interesting to the eye and to the hand.

Before sanding the wood plugs, I masked off the nicely burnished silver with tape. Along with the ebony pegs and splines, the silver inlay gives this bed some of the organic, mixed-media, hand-crafted flavor that is so appealing in Arts and Crafts furniture. □



Mix up some 20-minute epoxy and hammer the inlay home. A small block helps guide the inlay around the curves. Use C-clamps and MDF blocks to press down the silver wire.



Trim the inlay to fit the circular seed head, then glue in the wood plug. Rogowski uses a rotary tool freehand to trim the wire end, and a tapered plug cutter to make the $\frac{3}{8}$ -in.-dia. circles.

shape the end to the right angle, I used a disc sander and file. I back-beveled the end of the wire so that it would fill gaps as it went deeper into the groove. I also filed the bottom edges of the wire so that it would enter the groove more easily.

I discovered a problem when working the silver into the grooves. On the tight curves, the edges of the wire tore the wood edges. Because I didn't want to damage my good workpieces, I inlaid each shape first into a forming pattern routed into a piece of cherry. That way I could preshape each piece of inlay, pull it out of the form and flatten it along its horizontal plane in a vise before working it into the mahogany column.

I placed the silver at one end of its practice groove and started pressing and pounding it in place. I used a deadblow hammer against a scrap of MDF so that I wouldn't deform the silver. I started bending the wire well ahead of any curves to get the silver headed in the right direction.

JOINTECH
Ultra-Precision Woodworking Systems

The Upscale Alternative
Protected by 5 Patents

CabinetMaker's System®

SMART MITER™

AUTO-ZERO - FULL 100° SWING

- Scale Reads Inside & Outside of any Miter Cut
- Ultra-Precision, Incremental Crosscut & Miter Sled
- Zero Blade Clearance At All Angles
- Full Measure, 48" Incremental Fence
- Jointech Leadscrew Technology

The Best System For:

- Cabinet Making
- Routing
- Joint Making
- Joining

SAW TRAIN

Jointech Saw Train
For Cabinet Saws - Bench Saws - And The Shopsmith® Machine

With our **NEW Saw Train** you can now bring incredible precision to any Cabinet, Bench or Contractors saw... With Jointech all you need is **ONE FENCE** to do it all- NOT THREE!

- 5-Pt Locking System
- Absolute Parallelism
- Large Rip Capacity
- Vacuum Fence
- Micro-Adjustable
- Incremental Accuracy

FOR A CATALOG CALL:
1-800-619-1288

Jointech, Inc. and Shopsmith, Inc. are not affiliated.
Shopsmith is a Registered Trademark of Shopsmith, Inc.
Jointech, CabinetMaker's System and Smartence are Registered Trademarks of Jointech, Inc.

The Ultimate Upgrade
www.jointech.com

READER SERVICE NO. 163

PORTABLE SAWHELPER™ ULTRAFENCE™ BECAUSE IT DOESN'T PAY TO OWN SECOND BEST

- Fits all miter saws up to 15"; perfect for all slide compound saws.
- The only system that is truly accurate and sets up on any terrain in 60 seconds — guaranteed.



- Steel self-quartering coupler aligns fences with saw to 1/100" accuracy — no other system has it!
- Flipstop™ fence gage has hairline pointer for extreme accuracy, lever action, Lexan view plate, heavy steel construction.
- Extension are made of tempered aluminum to support heavy framing lumber.

- Legs store flat under fences and adjust from 30" to 42" — great for uneven terrain.
- Center stand folds flat, includes a quick release mounting plate for saw.
- Supports 500 pounds per side.



Rated #1 by
Fine Homebuilding magazine
in a comparison test.

Ref. 4-17-01

Available 5' to 9'4" per
side measured from blade.

AMERICAN DESIGN & ENGINEERING, INC.

1-800-441-1388

St. Paul Park, MN
www.sawhelper.com

651-459-7400

READER SERVICE NO. 162



Covering the heads of fine woodworkers everywhere.

When someone sees you in a *Fine Woodworking* hat, they know you care about woodworking. Whether you wear it in the shop or away—it's practical and comfortable enough for everyday use. New...and improved for your comfort!

Style #011048

With a deep crown and adjustable back band. Soft, easy-care, brushed cotton twill. Forest green with stitched logo. \$12.95, including shipping and handling.

To order call **1-800-888-8286**
operator W1084, or visit
finewoodworking.com

CT residents please add 6% sales tax; Canadian residents add 7% GST.

Woodworking Kits
Step-by-Step Plans with Hardware
WoodsmithStore.com
beds • cribs/cradles • workbenches • jigs

Branding Irons
Wouldn't your work look better
with your name on it? ©
NEW!
Changeable character head.
Dates-Names-Numbers
Signatures, logos, names. Any size or design.
Optional temperature controller.
Optional drill press mount.
Same-day quotations.
Rapid turnaround from order to delivery.
1-800-964-8251 www.brandnew.net
BrandNew Industries, Inc

School of Woodworking
DISCOVER the ART of
HAND TOOL WOODWORKING
1-15 day Courses to Advanced Levels
2002 Catalogue of Courses • (254) 799-1418
WWW.HOMESTEADHERITAGE.COM/ WOODWORKING

AFRICAN EXOTIC HARDWOODS
• BEST PRICES - DIRECT FROM SOURCE
• EXOTIC LUMBER, BLANKS
AND BURLS
• LARGE OR SMALL ORDERS WELCOME
• SHIPPED PROMPTLY NATIONWIDE
CONTACT MAX OR FABS TODAY (828) 658-8455 TEL.
CORMARK INTERNATIONAL (828) 645-8364 FAX.
181 REEMS CREEK ROAD, WEAVERVILLE, NC 28787

DIMESTORE COWBOYS
★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★
**Handforged
Handcrafted Hardware**
info@dimestorecowboys.com • 505-244-1493
407 Second Street SW Albuquerque, NM
www.dimestorecowboys.com
★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★

**QUARTERSAWN HARDWOODS
&
HIGHLY FIGURED LUMBER**
Ash, Cherry, Hard Maple, Red Oak, White Oak,
Walnut, Sycamore, Mahogany, Hickory, and Birch.
Also, many Exotic Species in Stock.
NEW We now have European Steamed
Beech and Burmese Teak.
WEST PENN HARDWOODS, INC.
(888) 636-WOOD (9663)
www.westpennhardwoods.com

MAKE A WINDSOR CHAIR
with Michael Dunbar
Week-long Workshops Held Year-round
44 Timber Swamp Road
Hampton, NH 03842
603-929-9801
thewindsorinstitute.com

**KREMER
PIGMENTS**
Harddrying Oil (#79020, 79030)
• boiled mixture of copal resin and linseed oil
• lustre, depth, weather-resistance and hardness
• depth primer or varnish • gloss or matt, 1 litre/\$ 18.00
Free catalog of woodfinishing supplies
Kremer Pigments Inc. - 228 Elizabeth Street
New York, NY 10012 - (800) 995 5501
www.kremer-pigments.com

BEVEL BOSS
As seen in FWW Tools & Shops #153 P. 30
Call Toll Free: 877-472-7717
SUTHERLAND TOOL
www.sutherlandtool.com

THE TOOL CHEST CRAFTSMAN
LIBRARY
CATALOG
NOW ON THE INTERNET...www.thetoolchest.com
1000's OF BOOKS COVERING
• Woodworking - All Aspects • Home Remodeling & Maintenance
• Tools & Their Uses • Contracting • Projects For Home & Recreation
THE TOOL CHEST • 45 Emerson Plaza East • Emerson, NJ 07630
201-261-8665 1-800-617-TOOLS Fax: 201-261-3865
FREE USA SHIPPING • BOOK ORDERS OVER \$25

HARDWOODS
Lumber • Veneer • Turning Stock
**Over 100 Quality Hardwoods
From Around the World**
Visit our web site
WOODWORKERSSOURCE.COM
Wood Descriptions, Prices, and Current Specials
800-423-2450
WOODWORKERS Source
5402 S 40th Street • Phoenix, AZ 85040
602-437-4415 • 602-437-3819 FAX

WOODJOY® TOOLS
Fine Tools to Enhance
Your Skill & Ability
P.O. Box 204, Swansea, MA 02777
508-669-5245
www.woodjoytools.com

Study Carving in Vermont
with Thomas Golding
Week-long Intensives in New
and Traditional Woodcarving. Year round.

HCR 33, Box 7, Saxtons River, VT 05154
Ph/fax 800-710-1872 www.ThomasGolding.com

The Cutting Edge, Inc.
Fine Hand Tools For Turners
Carvers & All Woodworkers

Hollow Turning Planes & Handtools
AutoMach Henry Taylor Carving & Power Carving
Turning Tools
www.cuttingedgetools.com
7123 SouthWest Fwy Houston TX 77074
713/ 981-9228

**SELF-ADHESIVE
70% WOOL FELT**
TAPES • STRIPS • TABS • DOTS
1-800-796-2333 APPROX. 1/16" & 1/8" THICK
BROWN, GREEN, BLACK
WHITE, AND SILVER GRAY
UBAWN 9611 SOUTH COTTAGE GROVE AVE.
PRODUCTS DIV. CHICAGO, IL 60628
FAX 773-375-2494

EXOTIC & DOMESTIC HARDWOODS
LUMBER • PLYWOOD • VENEERS • TURNING BLOCKS • BURLS
FINE WOOD CARVING:
• Architectural Moldings • Capitals • Corbels • Onlays
• Door Panels • Fireplace Mantels • Specialty Molding
We specialize in small to medium size orders!

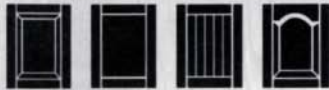
**Wood-Ply
Lumber Corp.**
Over 80 species of
hardwood in stock.
CALL FOR PRICE LIST:
800-354-9002
FAX 516-378-0345
100 Bennington Ave., Dept. FW
Freeport, NY 11520 www.woodply.com

DUST BOY, INC.®
1 and 2 HP Dust Collectors
• Cast Aluminum Blowers
• High Efficiency
• Extremely Quiet
• Portable
• 5 Year Warranty
Visit: www.dustboy.com
DUST BOY, INC.
P.O. Box 278
Arcanum, OH 45304
Free Brochure & Layout
Information Available
Fax (937) 692-8266
800-232-3878

The ULTIMATE SAW FENCE !
• EASY REMOVAL
• EASY REPLACEMENT
• ALWAYS PARALLEL
• SIMPLE INSTALLATION
• NO TAPPING
(530) 596-4435
www.microrip2000.com

www.routerbitsonline.com
1-800-821-8378

Sauers & Company
Exotic & Domestic Wood Veneer
Processed Veneers
www.sveneers.com
Phone: 336.886.4716
1102 Dorris Avenue
High Point, NC 27260
Exotic & Domestic Wood Veneers In Full Sheets or Cut to Size

BRING THE OUTDOORS, INDOORS

MANUFACTURERS OF QUALITY CABINET DOORS AND DRAWER FRONTS SINCE 1980 • CUSTOMIZED TO FIT YOUR CUSTOMER'S LIFESTYLE
PHONE: 1-800-273-8600
FAX: 1-800-565-5019
MASS BAY WOOD PRODUCTS, INC.
145 Fisher Street P.O. Box 497 • Franklin, MA 02038

YANKEE HARDWOOD SPECIALTIES
Select hardwoods
Volume discounts; seasonal specials
Providing woodworkers w/top quality hardwood for their prized creations.
Gift Certificates available.
Phone us at 800-646-6929
www.yankeehardwood.com

blum Grass mepla
www.cabinetparts.com
Wilsonart Laminates
Rev-A-Shelf
The one stop source for all your cabinet needs
Accuride Salice KV

Modular Cabinets
(800) 613-1557
www.ProductiveWorkspace.Com

BARTLEY
Museum quality Reproduction kit Furniture in Shaker, Queen Anne, and Chippendale styles in Tiger Maple, Cherry, Walnut & Mahogany Woods. Build your own masterpiece & Save hundreds \$\$\$\$!
Use Bartley Gel Finishes to finish your masterpiece.
Catalog at 1-800-787-2800
www.bartleycollection.com

Fine Architectural Millwork & Joinery

HARRIS Woodworking
Member AWT
Domestic & Exotic Hardwood Lumber & Plywoods
Custom Milling
T 860-649-4663 | www.harrisent.com

LASER GUIDE
Pinpoint laser accuracy in lining up cuts on all miter chop saws, drill presses etc.
Only \$59.95
FREE BROCHURE (800) 456-4987

LIBERON 800-245-5611
Your mail order source
woodfinishsupply.com
Quality materials for professional Finishing, Touch-Up & Repair
Star BEHLEN, Premier
Hot Stuff Glues, Liberon Steel Wool
Black Bison Wax, Brushes, Pigments, Shellacs, Dyes, Stains, Lacquers, Waterborn Coatings
LIBERON / Star Wood Finish Supply

accurate and tear out free
system/shelf pin holes in all materials with your plunge router professional appearance
32mm European system or traditional 1" centers

phone/fax 609-587-7187
9 John Lenhardt Road
Hamilton Square, NJ 08690
www.megproducts.com

BARR SPECIALTY TOOLS
www.barrtools.com
1-800-235-4452
CALL FOR FREE CATALOG

SOLID START, Elegant Finish.
OLD GROWTH
Quartersawn White Oak, Curly English Sycamore and American Sycamore
NEW and Matching, Tight Grained Veneers.
Precision sawn figured lumber, bookmatched flitches and NOW matching, tight grained veneers.
TALARICO HARDWOODS
610-775-0400
www.talaricohardwoods.com
22 Hardwood Lane
Mohnton, PA 19540
VISA / MasterCard

FROM THE HEART OF
BIRDSEYE MAPLE COUNTRY
PRIME QUALITY LUMBER AND FLOORING

1-800-968-0074 fax: 1-800-968-0094
Direct importers of hardwood flooring and lumber worldwide.
Over 80 species in stock

Nutcaps and Screwcaps are machined metal, polished & plated, screw & nut covers that thread onto washers and produce strong but beautiful joints on wood and metal. Available in 1/4", 5/16", 3/8", 1/2". Visit us at storageconcepts.bigstep.com
Call/write for brochure
Storage Concepts
4111 Placid Stream Ct.
Houston, TX 77059 281-286-0861


"CutList Plus helps you maximize wood use for less than \$100"
—Woodshop News
► Sheet layout optimization
► Board-foot calculations
► Project cost estimating
FREE TRIAL DOWNLOAD
http://cutlistplus.com/fw

WOODCRAFT
School of Fine Woodworking
Hands-on woodworking & furniture making classes
nights, weekends & week-long classes
249 Spencer St., Manchester, CT 06040
860.647.0303, www.schoolofwoodworking.com


We Sell Beauty... Veneer-Faces-Plywood
such as Anigre, Birdseye Maple, Bubinga, Ebony, Goncalo Alves, Harewood, Mahogany Crotch, Rosewood, Sapele and many more.
We have all Burls available.
No order too small.
Woodstock products (Veneer)
Wood Mosaic Inc. (Plywood/Faces)
800-505-8166 • 812-282-1900 • Fax: 812-288-5935
www.woodmosaic.com
www.woodstockproducts.com
E-mail: larry@woodmosaic.com

CONOVER WORKSHOPS
Educating America's Woodworkers for over 20 years!
Phone: 440-548-3491
Fax: 440-548-2721
E-Mail: www.conoverworkshops.com

Need wood?

VISIT
woodfinder



Over 350 quality suppliers!

www.woodfinder.com

No computer? Call toll-free 1-877-933-4637



BAUHAUS APPRENTICESHIP INSTITUTE

Apprenticeship: Art-Furniture Construction/Design,
one year-fulltime, hands-on, professional, no tuition / no salary.

756 Hannah St., Forest Park, IL 60130, (708) 488-8398
www.LF.org/bhai2000

THE ST. JAMES BAY TOOL Co.

Norris Style Planes
Finished or Castings

Antique Tools
Bought & Sold
Free Catalog

800-574-2589

www.stjamesbaytoolco.com



122 E. Main St.
Mesa, AZ 85201
480-835-1477



CROWN PLANE COMPANY

TRADITIONAL BENCH MADE PLANES

JACK...SMOOTH...SCRUB...SCRAPERS...BLOCK

CHAIRMAKERS TRAVISHERS...COMPASS PLANES

18 Chase Street South Portland, ME 04106

(207) 799-7535

Order Online www.crownplane.com

TIMBER WOLF™

Band Saw Blades

Swedish Silicon Steel ~ 1/8" - 2"

www.Suffolkmachinery.com

Free Catalog ~ 800-234-7297



We understand. We're wood people.

Whether it's the **smell** of a freshly cut board or the **feeling** of a fine finished piece, we understand there's nothing quite like working with wood. That's why we carry the highest quality kiln-dried **Northern and Appalachian hardwoods** and wood from **FSC certified** well-managed forests for all your wood-working projects. Call or visit one of our **3 locations**.

NORTHLAND FOREST PRODUCTS

Kington, NH • 603.642.3665

Troy, VA • 434.589.8213

Manassas, VA • 703.393.7500

www.northlandforest.com

The Fine & Creative Woodworking Program at ROCKINGHAM COMMUNITY COLLEGE

is an internationally recognized associate degree & certificate program. Instruction in hand-tools, furniture, construction, shop start-up, operation & much more.

PO Box 38, Wentworth, NC 27375-0038

Phone: (336) 342-4261, ext. 2178.

www.rcc.cc.nc.us/woodwork/homepage.html
AAEEOC

Woodworking Books, Videos & Plans

Save up to 20% * 800 titles in stock * Free price list

www.discount-books.com



ph 800-378-4060

P.O. Box 121

Penrose CO 81240

Exotic & Domestic VENEER



www.flamingoveneer.com

973-672-7600

FLAMINGO SPECIALTY VENEER COMPANY, INC.

CUSTOM BRANDING IRONS

HIGH QUALITY, DEEP ENGRAVED BRONZE DIES
LONG LASTING - INDUSTRIAL DUTY HEATERS

**NOT THE CHEAPEST - QUALITY COSTS MORE
FREE BROCHURE AND SAMPLE BRANDS**

ENGRAVING ARTS 800-422-4509 fax: 707-984-8045
P.O. Box 787 www.brandingirons.net
Laytonville, CA 95454 e-mail: clem@brandingirons.net

SANDY POND
HARDWOODS, INC.

LUMBER • FLOORING
FIGURED HARDWOODS
DOMESTIC AND EXOTICS

1-800-546-9663

www.figuredhardwoods.com

FREE GALLON OF
Titebond Glue
WITH 25 BF. OR MORE



www.customforgedhardware.com Kayne and Son Custom Hardware, Inc.



100 Daniel Ridge Road Dept. FW
Candler, NC 28715
(828) 667-8868 or 665-1988
Fax: (828) 665-8303

Catalog \$5.00

If You're Shopping for a

TORMEK®

Call Us First!

- All Accessories in Stock
- 5 Year Extended Warranty
- Technical Assistance



SHARPTOOLSUSA

1106 VALLEY RIDGE DRIVE
GRAIN VALLEY, MO 64029 **800-872-5489**

SharpToolsUSA@att.net www.SharpToolsUSA.com

TECH-WOOD, INC. Domestic & Imported Hardwoods

Holly, Blackwood, Mesquite, Koa

+ 60 other species, 4/4-16/4

Burls, Slabs, Thin Lumber

717-933-8989

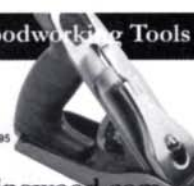
The Museum of Woodworking Tools

Fine tools including
CLIFTON BENCH PLANES,
lyonel chisels, Sorby, Two Cherries,
Norton, & books, videos, etc.

Shown: Clifton No. 3 Bench Plane,
Premium, heavy duty "Bedrock" design, \$169.95

Call 212-228-8884 for a free catalogue

www.toolsforworkingwood.com



OAKWOOD VENEER CO.

- Specializing in exotic and burl wood veneer
- Flexible paper-backed wood veneer
- 170 species in stock • Sheet sizes up to 5' x 12'

CALL FOR FREE SAMPLE! • Warehouse Showroom

800-426-6018 • Fax 248-542-9973

3642 W. 11 Mile, Berkley, MI 48072

www.oakwoodveneer.com

FREESAWBLADES.COM FREEROUTERBITS.COM

Check us out

WIN A GRIZZLY TABLE SAW IN OUR CRAFTSMAN CONTEST

The plans for this queen
sized bed are CAD
generated with pages of
instructions. Nightstand
included as a bonus.



#236

AMERICAN FURNITURE DESIGN
P.O. BOX 300100 ESCONDIDO, CA 92030
BED PLAN \$21.95 + \$3.50 S&H
CATALOG \$3.00
760 743-6923

www.americanfurnituredesign.com

GILMER WOOD CO. Quality Domestic & Exotic Lumber

- Logs, blanks, squares
- Over 50 species in stock
- Thin woods, Assortments, Books
- Musical Instrument woods

Phone **503-274-1271**

2211 NW St. Helens Rd, Portland OR 97210

Fax 503-274-9839 e-mail: gilmerwood@aol.com



- Flexible Veneer • A & AA Grade
- "No Bubble"™ in all species
- In stock, ready to ship today
- All veneers are guaranteed

**Call toll free: 866-6VENEER
(866-683-6337)**

New location to better serve you:

29915 W. Eight Mile Road • Livonia, MI 48152
Office: 248-477-8001 • Cell: 248-229-6731 • Fax: 248-477-8012



Quality Antique Reproduction Chairs

Italian Beechwood,
Chippendale, Hepplewhite,
Duncan Phyfe
Available unfinished & K.D.
Furniture Components

www.vintagechair.com



Quality German Workbenches 1-800-32Bench



Diefenbach Benches
33498 East US Highway 50
Pueblo, CO 81006

www.workbenches.com

WEST SYSTEM®

BOATBUILDERS SWEAR BY IT,
and so will you.

Strong, waterproof WEST SYSTEM® Brand epoxy is more than a 2-part adhesive. It's a complete system of resin, hardeners, fillers and additives from which you can easily create the perfect bonding, coating and sealing agents for your wood or composite project.

For a free copy of the 30-page WEST SYSTEM® User Manual & Product Guide, write:

Gougeon Brothers, Inc.
Dept. 44, P.O. Box 908
Bay City, MI 48707

989-684-7286 www.westsystem.com

Furniture That Floats

noahs Cedar Strip, Plywood, Canoe & Kayak Kits,



Boat
Building Supplies

www.noahsmarine.com 416-232-0522 Free Catalog

QuikWood® Epoxy Adhesive Putty Stick

repair rebuild restore bond attach patch seal



1. Cut 2. Mix 3. Fix
"When Fillers or Glue Won't Do"

Solvent Free
VOC Free
Shapes like modeling clay. Can be sculpted for fine detail. Bonds permanently. Hardens like wood. Sand, carve, drill, tint, paint, and finish.

888 4 FIX WOOD ext. 2209 - www.epoxysticks.com

A Woodworker's Dream

Learn to build Shaker-inspired furniture with our finest craftsmen.

One-on-one or group instruction available with classes to fit your schedule from one day to multi-week lengths.



DANA ROBES WOOD CRAFTSMEN

Lower Shaker Village, P.O. Box 707, Enfield, NH 03748
800 722-5036 • Fax: 603 632-5377 • www.danarobes.com

PELTOR® WORK TUNES™

AM/FM RADIO
KEEPS BAD SOUNDS OUT
& GOOD SOUNDS IN

\$59.95
(plus \$7.95 for S+H)



Kenco

Master Card AMERICAN EXPRESS VISA
www.atkenco.com
Rt. 28 Kingston, NY 12401 • 1-800-872-2964

An Education in Craftsmanship

For careers in:

- CARPENTRY
- PRESERVATION CARPENTRY
- CABINET & FURNITURE MAKING
- PIANO TECHNOLOGY
- VIOLIN MAKING & RESTORATION

Financial aid for qualified students. Accredited member ACCSCT. Short workshops are also offered.

NORTH BENNET STREET SCHOOL

39 North Bennet Street • Boston, MA 02113
(617) 227-0155 • www.nbss.org

The best
sawmill
value...ever.

\$3895

FREE INFORMATION - USA & CANADA
1-800-661-7746 EXT. 384 **NORWOOD**
HARDWARE & SUPPLY, INC.

Craftsman Workshops

Summer Workshops in Oregon with
Brian Boggs, Nora Hall, Phil Lowe,
Teri Masaschi, Gary Rogowski

503.284.1644

www.northwestwoodworking.com

THE NORTHWEST
WOODWORKING
STUDIO

CATALOG for WOODTURNERS!

Call Toll Free...

(800)-683-8876

Fax...(828) 859-5551

E-Mail...packard@alltel.net

Packard Woodworks - PO Box 718 - Tryon - NC 28782



Leigh Dovetail Jig Legacy Ornamental Mill

Tool Classes

MARKSTOOLSCHOOL.com

352 588 4948

TigerStop.com

Throw Away Your Tape Measure!

Mitred Doors

Flat or raised panel in a
variety of styles. Finished
or unfinished.

Valley Custom Door
1-800-236-8981

valleycustomdoor.com

Windsor Chairmaking Classes

With Marc Blanchette

207-667-1818

125 High St. Ellsworth, ME 04605

On Maine's Coast by Acadia National Park

windsor@mint.net



GUITAR MAKING

Master Class with Charles Fox

Invest six days, gain the knowledge of 30 years.
Use your woodworking skills to create fine guitars.

May 6-11, July 8-13, Sept. 2-7
707-431-9530

www.americanchooloflutherie.com



Legacy Woodworking Machinery

See the
Past Meet
the
FUTURE!

800-279-4570

www.legacywoodworking.com

All Plans Under \$10

bedroom • outdoor/garden • shop jigs

www.PlansNOW.com

SAVE 10% use coupon code: BANDSAW



WINDSOR CHAIR WORKSHOPS
in historic Oley Valley, Pennsylvania
Free camping/trout fishing on site
Small classes, individually structured
Jim Rendi, Tel: 610-689-4717
www.philadelphia-windsor-chair-shop.com

MISUGI DESIGNS



Japanese Tansu & Cabinet Hardware
Japanese Woodworking Tools
Japanese Paper

Visit us at:
www.misugidesigns.com
Tel: 707-422-0734 / Fax: 707-425-2465

www.librawood.com
"Forrest" Saw Blades
10" Woodworker II - \$97
10" Chopmaster - \$107.50
12" Chopmaster - \$123
8" Dado King - \$227
Free Shipping on Saw Blades
www.librawood.com

TWO CHERRIES

Huge selection of hand forged woodcarving and bench chisels



Robert Larson Co.
San Francisco
800-356-2195
www.rlarson.com

Since 1858

1627 New London Rd.
Landonberg, PA 19350
Phone: 610-274-8842
Fax: 610-255-3677
www.goodhope.com

Good Hope Hardwoods, Inc.
"Where Fine Woodworking Begins"

4/4 - 24/4 Custom Cut Wide Matched Sets
Custom Flooring Available
Specializing In:
Figured & Plain Cherry, Walnut & Claro Walnut,
Tiger Maple & 58" Wide Bubinga
Plus Many Other Species

Visa/MC Monthly Specials

TORX "The Ultimate Wood Screw"



Yellow Zinc 1" through 14" Stainless Steel 1-1/4" through 4"
Ceramic Coated (Exterior) 1-1/4" through 4" Trim Head Stainless Steel 1-5/8" through 4"
Self Counter-sinking, no stripping of head, reduced splitting and twist-off virtually eliminated.

RECEIVE PRE-PAID FREIGHT FOR ORDERS OVER \$50.00

SCREW PRODUCTS INC. 1-877-844-8880
www.screw-products.com

When Only The Finest Veneer Will Do...



Phone: 716-655-0206 Fax: 716-655-3446
www.certainlywood.com

Fine European Hand Tools



www.diefenbacher.com

Diefenbacher Tools • 12132 Old Big Bend • St. Louis, MO 63122
Free Hand Tool Catalog • 800-326-5316

QUESTIONS:
760-434-3030

Our website updates almost daily:
www.anexotichardwood.com

ORDERS: (TOLL FREE) 888-434-3031

ESTABLISHED IN 1975,
100 SPECIES OF EXOTIC WOOD!

TROPICAL EXOTIC HARDWOODS OF LATIN AMERICA

FACTORY DIRECT • LUMBER
SQUARES • SLABS • LOGS • BOWL STOCK

WOOD RIVER VENEER

Architectural & Cut to Size Panels, Faces, 2 Plys & Veneer

800-875-7084
www.woodriverveneer.com

THE FURNITURE INSTITUTE OF MASSACHUSETTS

Philip C. Lowe, Instructor/Director

A 2-year Hands-on Program with Master Furniture Maker

Summer Workshops available
www.furnituremakingclasses.com

116 Water Street
Beverly, MA 01915
(978) 922-0615

CUSTOM ROUTER BITS, CUTTERS & KNIVES
2 week or less delivery

LIBERTY LINE
WHEN IT COMES TO ROUTER BITS WE KNOW WHAT WE'RE TALKING ABOUT.

RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.
"Industry Leader In Custom Router Bits"

FAX us your custom drawings toll free at 1-888-RCT-TOOL (728-8665) or mail drawings or wood samples

RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.
595 New York Ave., PO Box 497, Lyndhurst, NJ 07071
Send \$3 for complete 100 page Stock Tool Catalog or see us at www.ridgecarbide.com
800-443-0992 rcttool@bellatlantic.net

DOVETAILED DRAWERS
Reasonably priced method to distinguish your cabinets.

- Custom-sized width and depth
- 1/2" solid maple, assembled and sanded
- 2-coat catalyzed finish available
- Quick service, shipped UPS

EAGLE WOODWORKING
1130 East Street, Tewksbury, MA 01876-1459
FAX (978) 640-1501 (800) 628-4849

www.TOOLcenter.com

Oregon Black Walnut

GOBY WALNUT PRODUCTS
5016 Palestine Rd.
Albany, OR 97321

Wide lumber - 4/4 through 16/4
Turning - Carving Stock
Gunstocks
Instrument Grade Lumber
No Minimum Order

VIEWING BY APPOINTMENT ONLY
(541) 926-1079 WebSite : www.gobywalnut.com

3M™ Power Visor
Includes Battery Charger

Airware America
Box 975, Elbow Lake, MN 56531-0975
3M Authorized Distributor
e-mail: airware@runestone.net
www.airwareamerica.com

Free Info 1-800-328-1792



Ideal for wood dust

CLASSIFIED

The Classified rate is \$8 per word, 15 word min. Orders must be accompanied by payment, ads are non-commissionable. The WOOD AND TOOL EXCHANGE is for private use by individuals only; the rate is \$15/line, minimum 3 lines. Send to: Fine Woodworking Classified Ad Dept., PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. FAX 203-426-3434, Ph. (800) 926-8776, ext. 310. Deadline for the July/August 2002 issue is April 25, 2002.

Business Opportunities

WOODSHOP//HOME 5,000 sq ft - Post and Beam, 3 acres with lake access, 5 min to Puget Sound, SCM 3 phase tools, 13 HP blower/baghouse, Anacortes, WA \$395,000. (360) 293-8636.

Finishes

SPRAY-ON SUEDE. Line boxes in seconds. Free brochure (sample enclosed). DonJer Products, 13142 Murphy Road, Winnebago, IL 61088. 800-336-6537. www.donjer.com

Hand Tools

ANTIQUÉ & USED TOOLS. Hundreds of quality hand-tools. Many Stanley + parts. At www.antique-used-tools.com Visa/MC. BOB KAUNE, 511 W. 11th, Port Angeles, WA 98362. (360) 452-2292.

VINTAGE PLANES & PARTS, buying and selling. Pete Niederberger, Box 887, Larkspur, CA 94977. (415) 924-8403 evenings. E-mail: pniederber@aol.com

ANCIENT & MODERN TOOLS. Woodworking, metal working and other. Users and collectors. www.pennyfarthingtools.co.uk

CLASSIFIED (continued)

FREE CARVING TOOL CATALOG: 1-888-901-8099 or (507) 332-9801. P.O. Box 611, Faribault, MN 55021. www.stubaidirect.com

Hardware

www.profhdwr.com Online Catalog; hinges, fasteners, sanding products, optivisors. Professional Hardware. Visa, MC, Discover.

Help Wanted

SMALL FURNITURE SHOP looking for help; five years experience. Resumes to Woodworking Studio, 741 Rutherford Rd., Greenville, SC 29609. Fax: 864-242-0119.

FURNITUREMAKER WANTED. Scenic northwest Connecticut location. Established high-end shop. Preview work at lanIngersoll.com Call Melissa or Ian at Ian Ingersoll Cabinetmakers. (860) 672-6334, or 800-237-4926.

Instruction

BENJAMIN HOBBS Furniture Making Classes. Queen Anne and Chippendale chairs, chests, beds, tables, more. Hertford, NC. (252) 426-7815. www.hobbsfurniture.com

TRADITIONAL HIGH-END FURNITURE design, finishing, carving, inlays. No tuition. Year apprenticeship. East Texas. (903) 769-1017.

STUDY WITH MASTER EUROPEAN CARVER Dimitrios Klitsas, featured on HGTV. For information and dates, visit www.klitsas.com (413) 566-5301.

NEW ENGLAND SCHOOL of Architectural Woodworking. 35-week career training in architectural woodworking or 6-week summer intensive for the serious enthusiast. (413) 527-6103. (MA) www.nesaw.com

SCHOOL OF CLASSICAL WOODCARVING. Elected British Master Carver, Ian Agrell, teaches carving for furniture and architecture from his San Francisco workshop. Information from www.agrellandthorpe.com or (415) 381-9474.

WOODTURNING INSTRUCTION: Russ Zimmerman's Punta Gorda, Florida workshop or yours. (941) 575-4337 or www.learntoturn.com

BLUE RIDGE MOUNTAINS, VA. One-year apprenticeship available to motivated individual. Saturated learning environment. Accommodations available, tuition. For more information call: Michael Maxwell, (540) 587-9543.

MASTERPIECE SCHOOL OF FURNITURE offers 1-3 year program in traditional furniture making. Mendocino Coast, California. Summer classes available. Ph/Fax (707) 964-8798. www.masterpieceschool.com

WOODWORKER ACADEMY, comprehensive entry level workshops and precision improvement are our specialty. San Francisco area (510) 521-1623 or www.woodworkeracademy.com

HANDS-ON WORKSHOPS in beautiful Maine. Basic and Advanced. Twelve-week intensive. Center for Furniture Craftsmanship (207) 594-5611, www.woodschoolorg

APPRENTICESHIP Winner of *Fine Woodworking* Magazine's Apprenticeship Program Award in Professional Artisan Furniture making/designing in rare solid woods. Tuition. Jeffrey Greene. (215) 348-5232. (PA) nolegsneeded.com/greeneandgreene.html

Machinery New/Used

USED PORTABLE SAWMILLS! Buy/Sell. Call Sawmill Exchange 800-459-2148, (205) 661-9821. <http://www.sawmillexchange.com>

Plans & Kits

FULL-SIZE PLANS for building fine furniture. Catalog \$3. Furniture Designs, Inc., CK-502, 1827 Elmdale Avenue, Glenview, IL 60025. 1-800-657-7692. www.furnituredesigns.com

CARLYLE LYNCH MEASURED DRAWINGS—Museum and private collection furniture plans by Carlyle Lynch. Catalog \$2. P.O. Box 13007, Arlington, TX 76094. (817) 861-1619.

FULL SIZE FURNITURE LAYOUTS Drawn by: Philip C. Lowe. Catalog \$3. (978) 922-0615. 116 Water Street, Beverly, MA 01915. www.furnituremakingclasses.com

Power Tools

1888nailgun.com headless pins, brads, finish nails, special sizes and types in stock or call 1-888-nailgun toll-free.

LAMELLO BISCUIT JOINERS and Accessories/Parts/Repairs. Best prices-most knowledgeable. Call Hank 1-800-789-2323. Select Machinery, Inc. (NY)

STAPLERS AND NAILERS at www.nailzone.com. Senco, Paslode, DuoFast, other tools and fasteners. (800) 227-2044.

Miscellaneous

GLASS SOURCE FOR WOODWORKERS. Glass and mirror custom cut, beveled, edged, etched, or grooved to your specifications. Shipped direct from our shop to yours. Call for free brochure, inquiries, or to place an order. Glass Source 1-800-588-7435.

Musical Supplies

PLANS KITS & SUPPLIES for musical instruments; harps, dulcimers, psalteries, banjos and more. Music-maker's Kits, Dept. FW, PO Box 2117, Stillwater, MN 55082. (651) 439-9120. www.musikit.com

BUILD YOUR OWN violin, guitar, or dulcimer! Free catalog featuring kits and all the tools, finishing supplies and instructions needed to build your own instrument. Stewart-MacDonald, Box 900-F, Athens, OH 45701. Call 800-848-2273. www.stewmac.com

Wood

FIGURED CLARO WALNUT slabs, planks, blocks, dimensions suitable for small to very large projects. California Walnut Designs. (800) 660-0203. www.woodnut.com

NICARAGUAN ROSEWOOD, cocobolo, walnut, mahogany, others; stored since 1978. For inventory, sizes, prices. (530) 692-1437. (CA)

CURLY MAPLE 4/4 to 12/4, kiln dried and air dried. Matched sets. New Hampshire, (603) 968-7981.

BLACK WALNUT BURL, veneer, slabs, gunstock blanks. Greenwood or dry. Call Newton Woods: (559) 277-8456 or walnutwoods.net

QUALITY NORTHERN APPALACHIAN hardwood. Custom milling. Free delivery. Bundled, surfaced. Satisfaction guaranteed. Niagara Lumber, 800-274-0397 (NY) www.niagaralumber.com

SAWMILL DIRECT bloodwood, cocobolo, bocote, tulipwood 4/4, 8/4, 12/4, 16/4. Select ebony billets \$3.00 lb. **TROPICAL EXOTIC HARDWOODS:** Toll Free 888-434-3031. www.anexotic hardwood.com. See our other ad in this issue for more information.

FLORIDA'S FINEST 50+ species, great quality inventory, sizes; personal selection/service. ALVA HARDWOODS, (941) 728-2484, 1-888-894-6229.

LONGLEAF (HEART) PINE LUMBER. Resawn from salvaged timbers. Lumber, flooring, stair-tread material and hardwood bow-staves. Lee Yelton: (706) 541-1039. (GA)

DOMESTIC AND IMPORTED EXOTICS. For musical instruments, pool cues, knife handles and custom furniture. Price list. Exotic Woods, 1-800-443-9264. www.exoticwoods.com

TIGER MAPLE, MAHOGANY, CHERRY; plain and figured. Wide boards, matched sets, 4/4 to 24/4. 200-ft. minimum. (570) 724-1895. www.irionlumber.com

FLORIDA—FROM ASH TO ZEBRAWOOD with milling available, including custom, antique restoration and curved moldings. Hardwood Lumber of Lakeland. (863) 646-8681. FREE 877-710-3900.

EISENBRAND EXOTIC HARDWOODS - Widest selection anywhere. Domestic/imported. Reasonable prices. Quality guaranteed. FREE brochure. Info - (310) 542-3576. Orders - 800-258-2587. (CA) www.eisenbran.com

REDWOOD BURL, RARE EXOTIC burl wood. Direct from logger. Table and clock slabs, turning blocks, box-wood! Burl Country: (707) 725-3982. Fax 707-725-3306. (CA)

CHESTNUT SPECIALISTS INC. Original plank, resawn or dimensional chestnut, oak and pine reclaimed antique lumber. Kilns drying. (860) 283-4209.

ATTENTION VA/MD AREA WOODWORKERS. K/D quartersawn sycamore, red & white oak. Cherry, walnut, elm, apple, and other domestic hardwoods. Herbine Hardwoods, Leesburg, VA. (703) 771-3067.

OREGON'S FINEST MAPLE, redwood and buckeye burl. Quality materials for the carver, turner & box maker. Lumber available in fiddleback & curly maple 4/4 to 16/4. (503) 394-3077. www.burlwoodonline.com

CALIFORNIA'S FINEST BURLWOODS: Massive inventory, many varieties, all sizes, any use, direct, guaranteed. Established 30-years. Burl Tree, 800-785-BURL.

WALNUT SLABS/CROTCHES 18-in. to 80-in. wide to 16-ft. long. Figured claro, myrtle, elm, sycamore. Black acacia. (408) 847-8433. 877-wal-slab. From our sawmills. Gilroy, CA. www.bakerhardwoods.com

BIRD'S-EYE AND CURLY MAPLE, 4/4 to 12/4 lumber, flitches, turning squares and blocks. Black walnut, cherry/quartersawn, and curly oak lumber. Dunlap Woodcrafts, Chantilly, VA. (703) 631-5147.

FINEST RED TEXAS MESQUITE Curly/straight grain. Prices start at \$6.50. 1-866-TEX-WOOD www.texaswoodworks.com

WOOD AND TOOL EXCHANGE

Limited to use by individuals only.

Wanted

MBK Ellipse Master jig base and arm extensions. Will pay US dollars, including shipping. Call Scott Gottwald, Denver, CO. (303) 946-9048 or e-mail emistudios@earthlink.net

For Sale

Fine Woodworking, 58-155 (89 missing) excellent condition. \$290. US dollars plus shipping. John Herndon, 1935 Cunningham Lane South, Salem, Oregon 97302 (503) 587-8566.

Fine Woodworking issues 4-154, (11 missing before #38) & *Fine Homebuilding* issues 1-12. All for \$450 plus shipping. Ron Rieman, 45940 Boulder Pl., Oakhurst, CA 93644. Or call (559) 683-8406.

Fine Woodworking issues 1-152. \$450. plus shipping. Call (208) 524-7453. Idaho Falls, Idaho. Arlen A. Beall.

Fine Woodworking back issues; 1-154, good condition. \$425. plus shipping. (262) 654-2848. Wisconsin.

Fine Woodworking issues 1-150 in excellent condition with indexes. \$460. plus shipping. (941) 498-8650. (FL)

Bandsaw-Inca model #710, 110V, extra blades. Like new, make offer. (918) 494-4666.

Matheson, Ibbotson, Spiers, Sorby, Norris. Twelve in total. Well but carefully used \$5250 FOB U.K. Stucampbell@msn.com

INDEX TO ADVERTISERS

Use reader service card - inside back cover.

For quick access to their websites, go to ADVERTISER INDEX at finewoodworking.com

Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>
103	Adams Wood Products, <i>p. 99</i>		GRS Tools, <i>p. 23</i>	85	Mass Bay Wood Products, Inc., <i>p. 107</i>	189	TechMark, Inc., <i>p. 35</i>
69	Airware America, <i>p. 110</i>	165	General Manufacturing Co., Ltd., <i>p. 91</i>			31	Tech-Wood, Inc., <i>p. 108</i>
5	Allred & Associates, Inc., <i>p. 27</i>	195	Gilmer Wood Company, <i>p. 108</i>	107	McFeely's Square Drive, <i>p. 99</i>	94	Tenryu America, Inc., <i>p. 27</i>
66	American Furniture Design, <i>p. 108</i>	12	Goby's Walnut Wood Products, <i>p. 110</i>	6	Microplane, <i>p. 23</i>	131	The windsor institute.com, <i>p. 106</i>
30	Ashman Technical, Ltd., <i>p. 23</i>	48	Good Hope Hardwoods, <i>p. 110</i>		Micro-Rip 2000, <i>p. 106</i>		Thomas Golding School, <i>p. 106</i>
175	Australian School of Fine Furniture, <i>p. 23</i>	124	Gorilla Glue, <i>p. 101</i>	127	Mini Max USA, <i>p. 15</i>	133	TigerStop, <i>p. 109</i>
		71	Gougeon Brothers, <i>p. 109</i>	153	Mini Max USA, <i>p. 99</i>	83	Tool Center.com, <i>p. 110</i>
89	Ball & Ball, <i>p. 27</i>	70	Groff & Groff Lumber, <i>p. 93</i>	2	Misugi Designs, <i>p. 110</i>	20	The Tool Chest, <i>p. 106</i>
	Barr Specialty Tools, <i>p. 107</i>		Guitar Making, <i>p. 109</i>		The Museum of Woodworking Tools, <i>p. 108</i>	140	Tool Dock, <i>p. 7</i>
81	The Bartley Collection, Ltd., <i>p. 107</i>			44	Noah's, <i>p. 109</i>	139	Tool Dock, <i>p. 115</i>
186	Bauhaus Apprenticeship Institute, <i>p. 108</i>	202	H. H. Perkins Company, <i>p. 7</i>			134	Tool Factory Outlet, <i>p. 23</i>
		204	Hammer USA, <i>p. 23</i>	56	North Bennet Street School, <i>p. 109</i>	159	Toolcrib.Amazon.com, <i>p. 11</i>
135	Belcher Veneer Co., <i>p. 108</i>	137	Harris Enterprise Corp., <i>p. 107</i>	49	Northend Hardwoods, <i>p. 15</i>	193	Tools On Sale, <i>p. 13</i>
15	Berea Hardwoods, <i>p. 21</i>	22	Hartville Tool Company, <i>p. 21</i>	91	Northland Forest Products, <i>p. 108</i>	125	Tracrac, Inc., <i>p. 30</i>
14	Berea Hardwoods, <i>p. 97</i>	118	Hearne Hardwoods, Inc., <i>p. 37</i>	33	Northwest Timber, <i>p. 29</i>	172	Tropical Exotic Hardwoods, <i>p. 110</i>
176	Biesemeyer Mfg., <i>p. 93</i>	190	Hida Tool & Hardware, <i>p. 103</i>	117	The Northwest Woodworking Studio, <i>p. 109</i>	41	Turbinaire, <i>p. 27</i>
	BrandNew Industries, <i>p. 106</i>	98	Highland Hardware, <i>p. 99</i>				Universal Joiner Device, <i>p. 35</i>
			Homestead Heritage Craft Center, <i>p. 106</i>	4	Norwood Sawmills, <i>p. 109</i>		
	Cabinetparts.com, <i>p. 107</i>	86	Iturra Design, <i>p. 21</i>			114	Vac-U-Clamp, <i>p. 89</i>
	Center for Furniture Craftsmanship, <i>p. 9</i>		IWF 2002, <i>p. 31</i>	78	Oakwood Veneer, <i>p. 108</i>	88	Vacuum Laminating Tech., Inc., <i>p. 29</i>
119	Certainly Wood, <i>p. 110</i>	28	J.B. Dawn, <i>p. 106</i>	184	The Old Fashioned Milk Paint Co., <i>p. 15</i>	7	Vacuum Pressing Systems, <i>p. 103</i>
169	The Charles G.G. Schmidt Co., <i>p. 9</i>	17	The Japan Woodworker, <i>p. 97</i>	160	Oldham Saw, <i>p. 19</i>	130	Valley Custom Door, <i>p. 109</i>
151	The Chippendale School of Furniture, <i>p. 95</i>	161	Jesada Tools, <i>p. 89</i>	126	Omer Direct, <i>p. 91</i>	97	Vass, Incorporated, <i>p. 35</i>
174	Classic Designs by Matthew Burak, <i>p. 21</i>	154	JessEm Tool Co., <i>p. 35</i>	192	Oneida Air Systems, <i>p. 11</i>	116	Vintage Chair, <i>p. 109</i>
		163	Jointech, <i>p. 105</i>	182	Osborne Manufacturing, <i>p. 3</i>	112	Virutex.com, Inc., <i>p. 89</i>
92	Colonial Saw Company, <i>p. 36</i>			19	Packard WoodWorks, <i>p. 109</i>	21	W. Moore Profiles, <i>p. 15</i>
194	Columbia Forest Products, <i>p. 17</i>	45	Katie Jig, <i>p. 17</i>	201	Philadelphia Windsor Chair, <i>p. 110</i>	57	WGB Glass, <i>p. 101</i>
11	Conover Workshops, <i>p. 107</i>		Kayne & Son, <i>p. 108</i>	60	Plans Now.com, <i>p. 109</i>	196	Wagner Electronic Products, <i>p. 3</i>
100	Cormark International, <i>p. 106</i>	72	Keller & Company, <i>p. 103</i>	166	Productive Workspace, <i>p. 107</i>	34	Waterlox Chemical & Coating, <i>p. 11</i>
105	Country Home Products, <i>p. 3</i>	158	Kenco Safety Products, <i>p. 109</i>			110	West Penn Hardwoods, <i>p. 106</i>
183	Crown Plane, <i>p. 108</i>	42	Kreg Tool Company, <i>p. 37</i>	99	Quick Wood, <i>p. 109</i>	123	Whitechapel, Ltd., <i>p. 21</i>
	CutList Plus, <i>p. 107</i>	23	Kremer Pigments, <i>p. 106</i>			185	Wilke Machinery Co./Bridgewood, <i>p. 95</i>
13	The Cutting Edge, Inc., <i>p. 106</i>	203	Kuffel Creek Press, <i>p. 89</i>	50	Rare Earth Hardwoods, <i>p. 107</i>	141	Williams & Hussey, <i>p. 93</i>
				43	Red Hill Corporation, <i>p. 21</i>	80	Wood River Veneer, <i>p. 110</i>
58	Dakota County Technical College, <i>p. 27</i>	206	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 7</i>	101	Ridge Carbide Tool Co., <i>p. 110</i>	171	Woodcraft School of Fine Woodworking, <i>p. 107</i>
96	Dana Robes Wood Craftsmen, <i>p. 109</i>	207	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 17</i>	77	Robert Larson Company, Inc., <i>p. 110</i>	148	Woodcraft Supply, <i>p. 11</i>
93	Delmhorst Instrument Company, <i>p. 95</i>	210	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 37</i>				Woodcraft Supply, <i>p. 97</i>
129	Delta Machinery, <i>p. 2</i>	208	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 89</i>				Woodfinder by Woodrose, <i>p. 108</i>
25	Diefenbach Benches, <i>p. 109</i>	209	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 103</i>	79	Ronk Electrical Industries, Inc., <i>p. 15</i>	53	Woodjoy Tools, <i>p. 106</i>
	Diefenbacher Tools, <i>p. 110</i>	128	Laser Guide, <i>p. 107</i>	65	Rosewood Studio, <i>p. 103</i>	179	Woodmaster Power Tools, <i>p. 15</i>
138	Dimestore Cowboys, <i>p. 106</i>	144	Lee Valley/Veritas, <i>p. 7</i>	9	Router Bits on the Web, <i>p. 101</i>	180	Woodmaster Power Tools, <i>p. 29</i>
108	Dust Boy, Inc., <i>p. 106</i>	120	Legacy Woodworking Machinery, <i>p. 109</i>	181	Routerbitsonline.com, <i>p. 106</i>	121	Wood-Mizer, <i>p. 37</i>
			Leigh Industries, <i>p. 36</i>				Woodpeckers, <i>p. 9</i>
61	Eagle Tools/EuroShop, <i>p. 98</i>		Leigh Industries, <i>p. 97</i>		The St. James Bay Tool Co., <i>p. 108</i>		Woodpeckers, <i>p. 37</i>
122	Eagle Woodworking, <i>p. 110</i>	75	LeNeave Machinery & Supply Co., <i>p. 27</i>				Woodpeckers, <i>p. 99</i>
	Electrophysics, <i>p. 99</i>		Liberon, <i>p. 107</i>	188	Sandy Pond Hardwoods, <i>p. 108</i>	143	WoodPly Lumber Corp, <i>p. 106</i>
29	Engraving Arts, <i>p. 108</i>	156	Librawood, <i>p. 110</i>	82	Sauers & Co. Processed Veneers, <i>p. 107</i>	54	WoodRat, <i>p. 11</i>
		24	Lie-Nielsen Toolworks, <i>p. 36</i>			16	Woodsmith Store, <i>p. 93</i>
170	FatCow.com, <i>p. 3</i>	102	Lignomat Moisture Meters, <i>p. 91</i>	162	Sawhelper, <i>p. 105</i>	59	WoodSmithStore.com, <i>p. 106</i>
155	Fein Power Tools, <i>p. 15</i>	164	Logosol, <i>p. 93</i>	8	Scherr's Cabinet & Doors, <i>p. 29</i>	51	Woodstock Products, Inc., <i>p. 107</i>
205	Felder USA, <i>p. 101</i>	106	Luthiers Mercantile Intl., <i>p. 99</i>	73	Screw Products, Inc., <i>p. 110</i>	63	Woodworker's Depot, <i>p. 21</i>
173	Festool, <i>p. 9</i>			64	SharpToolsUSA, <i>p. 108</i>	90	Woodworkers Discount Books, <i>p. 108</i>
	Fine Woodworking Hats, <i>p. 105</i>	95	M.L. Condon Lumber, <i>p. 17</i>	113	ShopBot Tools, Inc., <i>p. 89</i>	52	Woodworker's Source, <i>p. 106</i>
157	Flamingo Specialty Veneer, <i>p. 108</i>	10	MEG Products, <i>p. 107</i>	197	Space Balls, <i>p. 23</i>	46	Woodworker's Supply, <i>p. 37</i>
	Forrest Manufacturing, <i>p. 25</i>	177	Mao Shan Machinery, <i>p. 9</i>	199	Storage Concepts, Inc., <i>p. 107</i>	62	Worcester Center for Crafts, <i>p. 29</i>
104	Free Saw Blades.com, <i>p. 108</i>	68	Marc Adams School of Woodworking, <i>p. 98</i>	27	Suffolk Machinery, <i>p. 108</i>		
67	Fuji Industrial Spray Equipment, <i>p. 95</i>		Marc Blanchette Windsor Chair, <i>p. 109</i>	111	Super Shop by Smithy, <i>p. 101</i>	32	Yankee Hardwood Specialties, <i>p. 107</i>
191	The Furniture Institute of Massachusetts, <i>p. 110</i>	87	Mark's Tool School, <i>p. 109</i>	200	Sutherland Tool, <i>p. 106</i>	109	Yesterday, <i>p. 15</i>
				3	Talarico Hardwoods, <i>p. 107</i>		
				37	Target Enterprises, <i>p. 101</i>		
					Taunton Books, <i>p. 98</i>		

Prevent blotching when staining



There is nothing more disheartening than to ruin a finely built piece because of poor staining. Coloring certain woods can be very challenging to a finisher: Pine, cherry, birch, poplar and sometimes maple can quickly absorb stains, yielding uneven, blotchy results. By recognizing the high risk of this happening and preparing the wood ahead of time, disaster can be avoided.

The term stain controller, or conditioner, describes any product or method that will pretreat and condition the wood to control the absorption of a stain. They accomplish this by either filling the cells of the wood or leaving a thin film over them. These controllers can be divided into three groups: the first is the use of a thinned coat of clear finish applied before the stain. The second group includes controllers designed to manage the wood's absorption of the stain. Last, stain control can also be achieved by different finishing processes, such as sanding to very fine grits or spraying dye stains or tinted lacquers as opposed to brushing or wiping them.

Pretreat the wood with a thinned finish

This is the largest group of stain controllers and the one that most woodworkers have heard about and perhaps tried. Already likely to be found in most workshops, they are easy to apply. A washcoat of shellac and thinned oil-based finishes both penetrate the wood and leave a thin film over the cell structure. The gel varnish relies more on filling the pores.

Washcoat of shellac—

The typical washcoat is a 1-lb. or 1½-lb. cut of dewaxed shellac. The choice of shellac color is up to

the finisher. Blond shellac will not add a tone to the work, but an orange or buttonlac shellac will dramatically alter the base tone of the wood. Apply the washcoat evenly by brushing or spraying, let dry and scuff-sand with 320- or 400-grit paper. As with all thinned finishes, a washcoat of shellac on end grain prevents the dark appearance that is often found on areas such as tabletop ends. As with all stain controllers, a lighter stain tone can be expected because of the reduced absorption.

Recommended stains to use with this conditioner are pigment stains or oil- and water-based dyes, which all can be applied by hand or sprayed.

Thinned oil-based varnishes and urethanes—Oil-based varnish or urethane in a 1:1 ratio with a solvent is a good starting point for porous woods such as pine. Thinner solutions, perhaps 1:3, would be adequate for hardwoods such as cherry. In either case scuff-sand the surface after the controller has dried. Recommended stains are oil-based pigment stains or gel stains. The final topcoat might pull a little of the stain if it is being brushed. To lessen this risk, work quickly without manipulating the topcoat excessively.

Gel varnishes—By nature gel stains are unable to penetrate deeply. However, with woods that will blotch, first wipe on a coat of clear gel varnish. Let the varnish dry and then scuff-sand. Recommended stains are gel stains and oil-based pigment stains.

Danish oil—Using this finish as a stain controller is very similar to using a



THINNED FINISHES

Clear finishes are easy to use as stain controllers and are more than likely already in your shop. Use shellac on areas most prone to blotching.

thinned varnish. Recommended stains are oil-based pigment stains and gel stains that are oil- or water-based.

Ready-made stain controllers are easy to use

A simple alternative to making a stain controller from scratch is to purchase it. Minwax Pre-Stain Wood Conditioner works in a similar way to Danish oil, entering the wood to control a subsequent stain's penetration. Apply the controller with a brush or cloth, wait a few minutes and then wipe off the excess. Minwax recommends using only an oil-based pigment stain, and it must be applied within a two-hour window.

The Minwax water-based Pre-Stain Wood Conditioner for water-based stains is a film-forming type of stain controller. Brush it on and let it dry for about 30 minutes. Then scuff-sand with 320- or 400-grit paper and stain the wood. This product worked well on a pine sample with water-based aniline dyes, Clearwater gels and various pigmented water-based stains.

Zinsser offers a new product, called Bulls Eye SealCoat, which is essentially a 2-lb. cut of dewaxed shellac. When used as a stain controller, the recommendation is to cut the product with denatured alcohol in a ratio of two parts SealCoat to three parts alcohol, which yields about a 1-lb. cut.

Glue size is generally sold as a concentrated product that the user dilutes with water. Examples include Franklin's Glue Size, Moser's Wood Prep and generic hide glue. When diluting the product with water, it is important to try the strength of the mix on a test piece. A ratio of three parts water to one part glue size may be fine for a hardwood, but pine may require closer to a 1:1 ratio. Apply evenly with a brush, let dry and scuff-sand with 320- or 400-grit paper. This is a particularly good conditioner for end-grain application. An added benefit achieved by the size is that it stiffens the wood fibers as it dries, and scuff-sanding shears them off, leaving the surface ultra-smooth. Recommended stains to use with these controllers are oil-based pigment stains and non-grain-raising stains.

You may not need a stain controller

There are a couple of ways to achieve an evenly stained appearance without resorting to the

OVER-THE-COUNTER STAIN CONTROLLERS

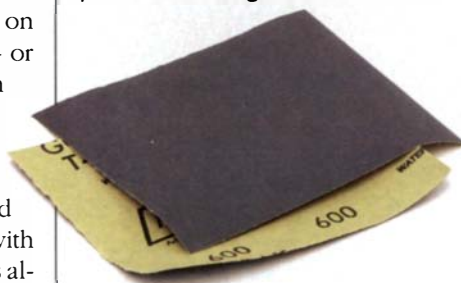
Each of these ready-made stain controllers suits different needs. Glue size is best on end grain; a water-based controller suits water-based stains; and an oil-based controller is for oil-based stains.



SPRAYING AND FINE SANDING

Spraying is the quickest form of stain control. Light mist coats of stain will lay on the surface without penetrating or blotching. Simply apply additional coats until the desired color is obtained.

Sanding is another alternative. Six-hundred-grit sandpaper polishes the wood, leaving a surface that won't absorb stain so easily or be prone to blotching.



use of stain controllers. You can sand the wood to a high grit or use spray equipment.

Hardwoods, such as maple or birch, respond well to sanding. By sanding up through every grit from 120 through 400, or even 600, the wood cells are closed and the grain is polished, uniformly reducing the absorption of stain. Any stain can then be used with this method, but a lighter tone is to be expected. This process does not work on softwoods.

To spray dye stains or tinted lacquers, be sure to use a spray gun or an airbrush that is set up for a very dry mist. This will add successive light coats to create a uniform color on any difficult wood without penetrating and blotching. Pine responds very well to this method. The key is the light layering of color applied several times until the desired affect is reached.

And the winner is...

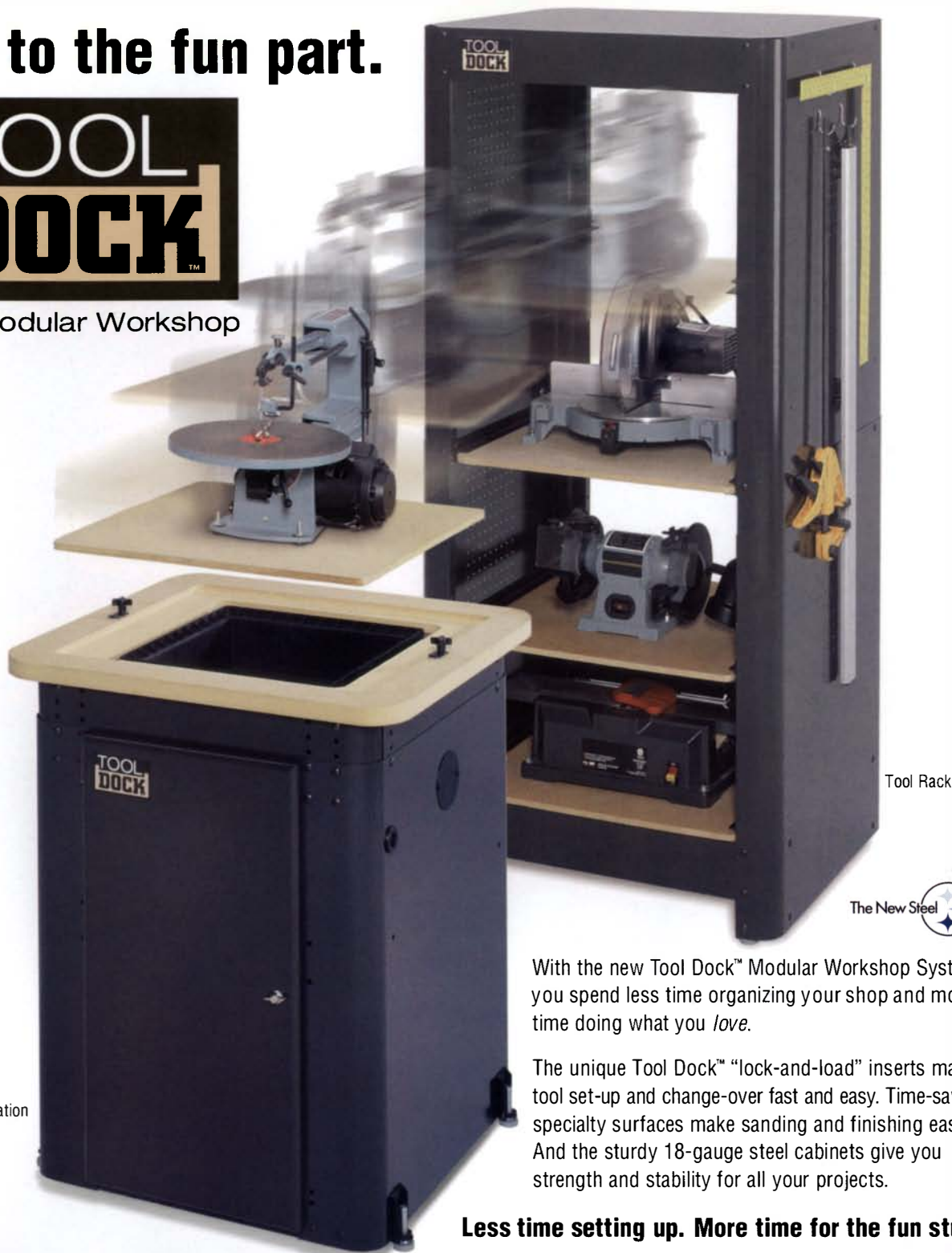
When deciding which method to use, consider what stain and top-coat will be used. For instance, a washcoat of shellac would never be used under an alcohol-based dye, because the dye would soften the shellac and grab, leaving an uneven result. A glue size would not be the first choice when using a water-based pigment stain. If it's not wiped quickly and has time to set, the water-based stain will soften the glue size and grab. A better conditioner for water-based stains is a washcoat of shellac. Thinned finishes and the manufactured stain controllers (with the exception of shellac) are best confined to those woods with less risk of blotching.

For woods most prone to blotching, shellac and glue size are the best insurance of an even stain. On large pieces it is hard to brush on glue size evenly and be certain that you haven't missed a bit—a better method would be to spray it. The main drawback of sanding to control stain is the time involved. If you have spray equipment, layering mist coats of stain or tinted lacquer give you the most control in the least amount of time. □

Get to the fun part.



The Modular Workshop



Tool Rack



With the new Tool Dock™ Modular Workshop System, you spend less time organizing your shop and more time doing what you *love*.

The unique Tool Dock™ "lock-and-load" inserts make tool set-up and change-over fast and easy. Time-saving specialty surfaces make sanding and finishing easier. And the sturdy 18-gauge steel cabinets give you strength and stability for all your projects.

Less time setting up. More time for the fun stuff.



Router Station



Shop Bench



Multi-Station



Mobile Station



Tool Crib with
Corner Top

For more information or an outlet near you...

www.tooldock.com

Tools not included. Patent pending. ©2002 Waterloo Industries, Inc., USA

1-866-TOOLDOCK

Toll-free call 1-866-866-5362



Anniversary Desk

Twenty-five years ago, shortly after John and Nancy were married, they bought a country-style ladies desk (left) at auction. The piece held great memories for the two of them, but after seeing Ted



Blachly's work at an annual exhibit held by the New Hampshire Furniture Masters Association,

John decided that an updated, more elegant piece would make the perfect 25th-anniversary gift. The couple contacted Blachly, of Warner, N.H., who worked closely with them to create the design for a new desk. "They were kind people with a keen sense of design," said Blachly. He had just begun working on the piece when John unexpectedly suffered a heart attack and died. The project was put on hold for several months until Nancy asked Ted if he would continue the work. "That was what John would have wanted," she said. Eight months later, Blachly delivered this personalized desk made of figured mahogany with a blistered-maple interior. It features three small drawers below, with a silver-heart inlay (above) in the center drawer.

